

# ELEMENTARY coursebook

Lindsay Clandfield & Kate Pickering

with additional material by Amanda Jeffries

# global



global

ELEMENTARY

# coursebook

Lindsay Clandfield

Kate Pickering

with additional material by Amanda Jeffries



MACMILLAN



# About Global

**Lindsay Clandfield** is a teacher, teacher educator and lead author of Global. He was born in England, grew up in Canada, taught at a university in Mexico, lives in Spain and has trained teachers from around the world. He is also the creator of the popular blog *Six Things* ([www.sixthings.net](http://www.sixthings.net)), a collection of lists about ELT.



**Kate Pickering** is the Director of the Adults' department at International House Madrid. There she combines running a large department with her work as a teacher trainer and assessor on Cambridge CELTA and DELTA as well as IH's in-service training programmes. She continues to teach regularly and particularly enjoys working with low level students such as the senior learners she taught while writing *Global Elementary*.

## Six things we wanted for global

real lives

international voices

intellectual curiosity

cultural knowledge

a global outlook

a different book

### Global Elementary by numbers:

10 units    160 pages    37 texts

about people & places    49 vocabulary sections

34 explanations of English grammar    10 functional

English lessons    27 accents from around the

world in Global Voices    260 audio clips

30 video clips    150 interactive activities

100s of curious and

interesting facts



# Content highlights

## 1 Facts & Figures

Global English facts Number plates from around the world The power of numbers Telecommunications facts and figures in the UK and the US



## 2

### Where & When

Megacities Created capitals The cross-border commuter Calendars from around the world

## 7 News & Weather

The news ... from local to global *All the President's Men* by Woodward & Bernstein The great Eskimo vocabulary hoax Storm chasing: a great day out?



## 9

### Life & Style

One planet, one place! ... the Encyclopedia of Life Rites of passage The history of fashion ... the origins of seven common items

## 3 Family & Friends

Shakespeare's tragic families Scottish clans Meeting places around the world Man's best friend ... people and dogs in history

## 8

### Coming & Going

Pedal Power Coming to Hong Kong The four stages of culture shock Why did you go? Four people who emigrated

## 4 Bed & Breakfast

Hotels with a difference Couchsurfing ... a new way to travel A full English breakfast *Hungry Planet* ... an interview with Peter Menzel

## 5 Film & Television

World cinema Make a pitch ... great ideas for films Television theories ... the effects of television on human beings Film reviews

## 6 Work & Study

The Gallup survey of young people Ten facts about typing Important firsts ... centres of learning School days

## 10

### Fun & Games

Masters of fun Malta fact file A ball can change the world ... The Homeless World Cup Kim's Game

## Global English

by **David Crystal**

- page 27 Three circles of global English
- page 51 Delicious English
- page 99 English place names
- page 111 English advertising goes to the movies
- page 123 Language play





# Contents

		<b>Grammar</b>	<b>Reading texts</b>	<b>Listening texts</b>	<b>Vocabulary</b>	<b>Speaking and Pronunciation</b>
<b>UNIT 1</b>	<b>Facts</b> page 6	Articles ( <i>a, an</i> ) (p7) <i>Be</i> (p9)  Possessive adjectives (p13)	Global English facts (p6)  The power of numbers (p10) The UK and US ... telecommunication facts and figures (p12)	Number plates from around the world (p8)  Numbers and ordinals (p10) Completing forms (p13)	International words (p7) Numbers 1–10 (p8)  Numbers 11–99, ordinals (p10) Email and website addresses (p12) <b>EV</b> about (p12)	Conversations about cars (p9) <b>P</b> The alphabet (p7)  Numbers in a sequence (p10) Finding out personal details (p13)
	<b>Figures</b> page 10	<b>Function globally: Meeting people</b> <b>Global voices: Introducing yourself</b>	(p14) (p15)	<b>Writing:</b> <b>Study skills:</b>	<b>A form</b> <b>Classroom language</b>	(p16) (p17)
<b>UNIT 2</b>	<b>Where</b> page 18	Prepositions ( <i>from, in, near</i> ) (p19) <i>Wh-</i> questions (1) (p21)	The created capital (p20)  The cross-border commuter (p22) Calendars from around the world (p24)	Megacities (p18) Cities and countries (p19)  Telling the time (p22) The cross-border commuter (p22) Dates (p24)	Megacities (p18) Describing places (p20) <b>EV</b> also and too (p20)  Daily routine (p22) Time and dates (p24)	Where are you from? (p19) Important factors in choosing a place to live (p21) <b>P</b> Nationalities (p18)  A typical day (p23) <b>P</b> /s/, /z/ and /ʒ/ (p23)
	<b>When</b> Page 22	Present simple (3 <sup>rd</sup> person) (p23) Present simple (negative) (p25)				
<b>UNIT 3</b>	<b>Family</b> Page 30	Possessive 's (p31) Questions with <i>do/does</i> (p33)  <i>Wh-</i> questions (2) (p35) Object pronouns (p37)	Shakespeare's tragic families (p30) Clans (p32)  Meeting places around the world (p34) Man's best friend? (p38)	Clans (p32)  Man's best friend? (p36)	Family (p30) Colours (p32)  Describing what you do with friends (p35) Adjectives to describe characteristics (p36) <b>EV</b> really (p36)	Find someone who (p33) <b>P</b> Intonation in questions (p33)  Talking and asking about friends (p34 & 35) <b>P</b> Emphasising (p37)
	<b>Friends</b> page 34	<b>Function globally: Showing interest</b> <b>Global voices: Your family</b>	(p38) (p39)	<b>Writing:</b> <b>Study skills:</b>	<b>Favourite days</b> <b>Describing a routine</b> <b>Working with other people</b>	(p25) (p28) (p29)
<b>UNIT 4</b>	<b>Bed</b> page 42	<i>There is / There are</i> (p43)	Unusual hotels (p42) The CouchSurfing project (p45)	Describing a home (p45)	Hotel facilities (p42) Furniture (p44)	Inventing a hotel (p43) Talking about your house (p45) <b>P</b> Consonant clusters (p44)
	<b>Breakfast</b> page 46	Countable and uncountable nouns (p47) Quantifiers ( <i>a lot of, much, many, some</i> ) (p49)	A full English breakfast (p46)  Hungry planet (p48)	A full English breakfast	Food and drink (p46) Fresh and processed food (p48) <b>EV</b> a type of, a kind of, a sort of (p46)	Describing a picture of a breakfast (p47) <b>P</b> Linking words (p47)
<b>UNIT 5</b>	<b>Film</b> page 54	<b>Function globally: Making and responding to offers</b> <b>Global English: Delicious English</b>	(p50) (p51)	<b>Writing:</b> <b>Study skills:</b>	<b>Writing about what you eat/would like to eat</b> <b>An email to a hotel</b> <b>Learning new words</b>	(p49) (p52) (p53)
	<b>Television</b> page 58	Frequency adverbs ( <i>every day / week / month</i> ) (p55)  Frequency adverbs ( <i>always, often, sometimes...</i> ) (p59)	World cinema (p54) Make a pitch (p56)  Television theories (p60)	World cinema (p54)  People talking about television programmes (p58)	A trip to the cinema (p55) Types of film (p57)  Television programmes (p58) Phrasal verbs ( <i>turn down, turn off</i> ) (p60) <b>EV</b> see, watch (p60)	A trip to the cinema (p55) <b>P</b> /i/ and /ɪ/ (p56)  Television habits (p59) Talking about television (p61) <b>P</b> Phrasal verbs ( <i>turn down, turn off</i> ) (p60)
		<b>Function globally: Shopping</b> <b>Global voices: Going to the cinema</b>	(p62) (p63)	<b>Writing:</b> <b>Study skills:</b>	<b>Writing a pitch</b> <b>A review</b> <b>Making notes</b>	(p57) (p64) (p65)

EV - Extend your vocabulary    **P** - Pronunciation



		Grammar	Reading texts	Listening texts	Vocabulary	Speaking and Pronunciation
UNIT 6	<b>Work</b> page 66	Can (possibility) (p67) Can (ability), adverbs (p69)	The Gallup survey (p68) Ten facts about ... (young) (p68)	Benefits at work (p67)	Jobs (p66) Abilities (p69)	(P) Can (p69)
	<b>Study</b> page 70	Was / Were (p71) Questions with was / were (p73)	Important firsts ... centres of learning (p70) School days (p73)	Important firsts ... centres of learning (p70) School days (p73)	Types of school (p70) School subjects (p72) EV a (little) bit (p73)	Schools in your country (p70) School subjects (p72) Talking about school (p73) (P) Two-syllable words (p72)
UNIT 7		<b>Function globally: Making requests and responses</b> (p74) <b>Global voices: Your favourite teacher</b> (p75)		<b>Writing: A job application</b> <b>Study skills: Learning grammar</b>		(p67) (p76) (p77)
	<b>News</b> page 78	Past simple (regular verbs) (p79) Past simple (irregular verbs) (p81)	The news ... from local to global (p78) All the President's men (p80)	The news ... from local to global (p78) All the President's men (p80)	EV history and story (p80)	A news story (p81) (P) The past simple (p81)
UNIT 8	<b>Weather</b> page 82	It (p83) Past simple (questions and negative) (p85)	The great Eskimo vocabulary hoax (p82) Storm chasing (p84)	Storm chasing (p84)	Weather (p82)	Conversations with it (p83) Opinions about weather (p84) A day out (p85) (P) /w/ and /v/ (p85)
		<b>Function globally: Speaking on the telephone</b> (p86) <b>Global voices: Your favourite weather</b> (p87)		<b>Writing: A biography</b> <b>Study skills: Describing an event</b> <b>Remembering words</b>		(p79) (p88) (p89)
UNIT 9	<b>Coming</b> page 90	Present continuous (p91) Present simple & present continuous (p93)	Pedal power (p90) Coming to Hong Kong (p92)	The Mid-Levels Escalators (p92)	Transport (p90) Big numbers (p92) EV come and go (p92)	Transport questionnaire (p91) A travel dialogue (p93) (P) /y/ (p91)
	<b>Going</b> page 94	The comparative (p95) The infinitive of purpose (p96)	Culture shock! (p94) Global migration (p96) Why did you go? (p96)	Feelings (p94)	Feelings (p94) What would you take and why? (p97)	Changes in population (p95) What would you take and why? (p97) (P) Weak and strong forms (p97)
UNIT 10		<b>Function globally: Asking for directions</b> (p98) <b>Global English: English place names</b> (p99)		<b>Writing: An email about culture shock</b> <b>Study skills: A report</b> <b>Understanding learning aims</b>		(p95) (p100) (p101)
	<b>Life</b> page 102	Present perfect (p103) The superlative (p105)	One planet, one place! (p102) Rites of passage (p104)	A conversation about unusual species (p102)	Nature (p102) Life events (p104)	Contact with nature (p103) Life events (p104) A tradition in your country (p105)
UNIT 11	<b>Style</b> page 106	Have got (p107) One and ones (p109)	Body styles (p106)	Parts of the body (p106) The history of fashion (p109)	Parts of the body (p106) Parts of the face (p107) Clothes (p108) EV talking about colours (p109)	(P) /f/ and /v/ (p108)
		<b>Function globally: Talking about health problems</b> (p110) <b>Global English: English advertising goes to the movies</b> (p111)		<b>Writing: Describing someone</b> <b>Study skills: A speech</b> <b>Dictionary skills 2: learning about words</b>		(p107) (p112) (p113)
UNIT 12	<b>Fun</b> page 114	The -ing form (p115) Going to (p117)	Masters of fun (p114) Malta (p116)	Reasons for visiting Malta (p116)	Free time activities (p114) Places in a city (p116) EV fun and funny (p114)	Free time activities (p114) Malta (p116) Planning a weekend for someone (p117)
	<b>Games</b> page 118	Present perfect and past simple (p119)	A ball can change the world (p118) Kim's game (p120)	Popular language games (p120)	Sports (p118) Playing games (p121) EV -less and -ful (p118)	Asking about sport (p119) Playing games (p120) Explaining a game (p121) (P) Word bingo (p120)
		<b>Function globally: Making suggestions</b> (p122) <b>Global English: Language play</b> (p123)		<b>Writing: An email to a friend</b> <b>Study skills: Using graded readers</b>		(p124) (p125)
<b>Communication activities:</b> Student A: (p126) Student B: (p128)		<b>Additional material:</b> (p130) Phonetic symbols: (p135)		<b>Grammar focus:</b> (p136) <b>Audioscript:</b> (p152)		<b>Irregular verbs:</b> (p158)



# Facts & Figures

## Part 1

### Reading

#### Global English facts

#### Vocabulary

#### International words

#### Grammar

#### Articles (a, an)


#### Pronunciation

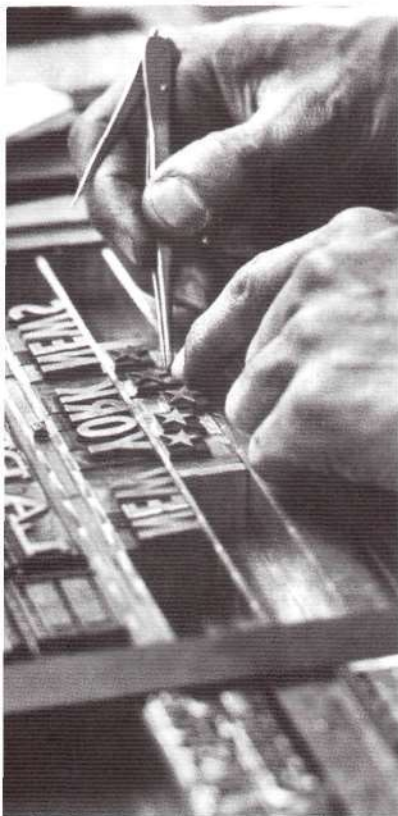
#### The alphabet

## Reading

**1** What do you know about the English language? Work in pairs. Guess the answers.

- 1 English is the official language in ...
  - a 20 countries.
  - b 50 countries.
  - c more than 50 countries.
- 2 English is a first (1<sup>st</sup>) or second (2<sup>nd</sup>) language for more than ...
  - a 5 billion people.
  - b 50 million people.
  - c 500 million people.
- 3 Many English words are not new for beginner English students because ...
  - a they are similar in other languages.
  - b they are from the world of business, travel, fashion and music.
  - c both of the above (a and b).

**2**  **1.01** Read and listen to *Global English Facts* and check your guesses.



## Global English facts

English is the first or second language for more than **500 million people** in the world.

English is an official language in **more than 50 countries**.

Many English words are not new to beginner English students. There are three reasons for this:

- There are many **international words** in English. These words are the same in many different languages. *Doctor* and *radio* are international words.
- Many English words are similar in other languages. *Policía* (Spanish), *polizei* (German), *police* (French), *polizia* (Italian) and *police* (English) are all similar.
- People know a lot of English because it is connected to the world of **music, travel, business, fashion** or **computers**. For example, *email*, *hotel*.





## Vocabulary

1 Look at the *A to Z of global English*. Match the words to the categories in the box below.

# A to Z of

## global English

<b>A</b> airport	<b>N</b> no
<b>B</b> buses	<b>O</b> OK
<b>C</b> chocolate	<b>P</b> pop
<b>D</b> doctor	<b>Q</b> question
<b>E</b> email	<b>R</b> radio
<b>F</b> family	<b>S</b> sandwich
<b>G</b> golf	<b>T</b> taxi
<b>H</b> hospital	<b>U</b> universities
<b>I</b> internet	<b>V</b> virus
<b>J</b> juice	<b>W</b> Windows
<b>K</b> kilometres	<b>X</b> X-ray
<b>L</b> love	<b>Y</b> yes
<b>M</b> menu	<b>Z</b> zoo

computers   expressions  
 food and drink   jobs   music   places  
 sports   transport   other

2 1.02 Listen and check your answers.

3 Work in pairs. Think of other words for these categories. Then compare with other pairs.

## Grammar

*an* airport, airports  
*a* doctor, doctors  
*a* family, families  
*a* sandwich, sandwiches

- use *a* / *an* with singular nouns
- use *a* with a consonant sound and use *an* with a vowel sound
- plural nouns are formed with *s* / *es* / *ies*

1 Look at the alphabet again and find examples of ...

1 *an* + noun.   2 *a* + noun.   3 plural nouns.

2 Write *a* or *an*.

— alphabet	— director	— hotel
— bus	— email	— pizza
— computer	— football	— telephone

3 Add any new words from exercise 2 to the categories in vocabulary exercise 1.

**Grammar focus** – explanation & more practice of articles on page 136

## Pronunciation

1 1.03 Listen and repeat the letters and words in the alphabet.

2 1.04 Listen to how English letters are pronounced.

/eɪ/	/ɪ:/	/e/	/aɪ/	/ɔʊ/	/u:/	/ɑ:/
A	B	F	I	O	Q	R
H	C	L			W	
J	D	N				
	G	X				
	P	Z				
	V					

3 Complete the table with these letters.

E   K   M   S   T   U   Y

4 1.05 Listen and check your answers. Then repeat the letters.

5 Work in pairs. A: spell a word from the *A to Z of global English*. B: point to the word. Then swap roles.





## Part 2

Vocabulary & Speaking

Numbers 1-10

Listening

Number plates from  
around the world

Grammar

Be

Speaking

Conversations about cars

## Vocabulary and Speaking

1 Put the letters in the correct order to spell the numbers.

0 eo zr    3 ree ht    6 xis    9 ein n  
1 noe    4 rou f    7 ves ne    10 net  
2 wot    5 evif    8 theig

2 Work in pairs. Turn to page 130. Practise saying letters and numbers.


## Listening

1 Work in pairs. Look at the number plates. Can you guess where they come from? Use the countries in the box below to help you.

Afghanistan    Austria    Canada  
Ghana    Korea    Ireland    Italy  
Mexico    Russia    US

## Useful phrases

- What about this one?
- Is it from Ireland?
- Yes.
- No. It's from Italy.

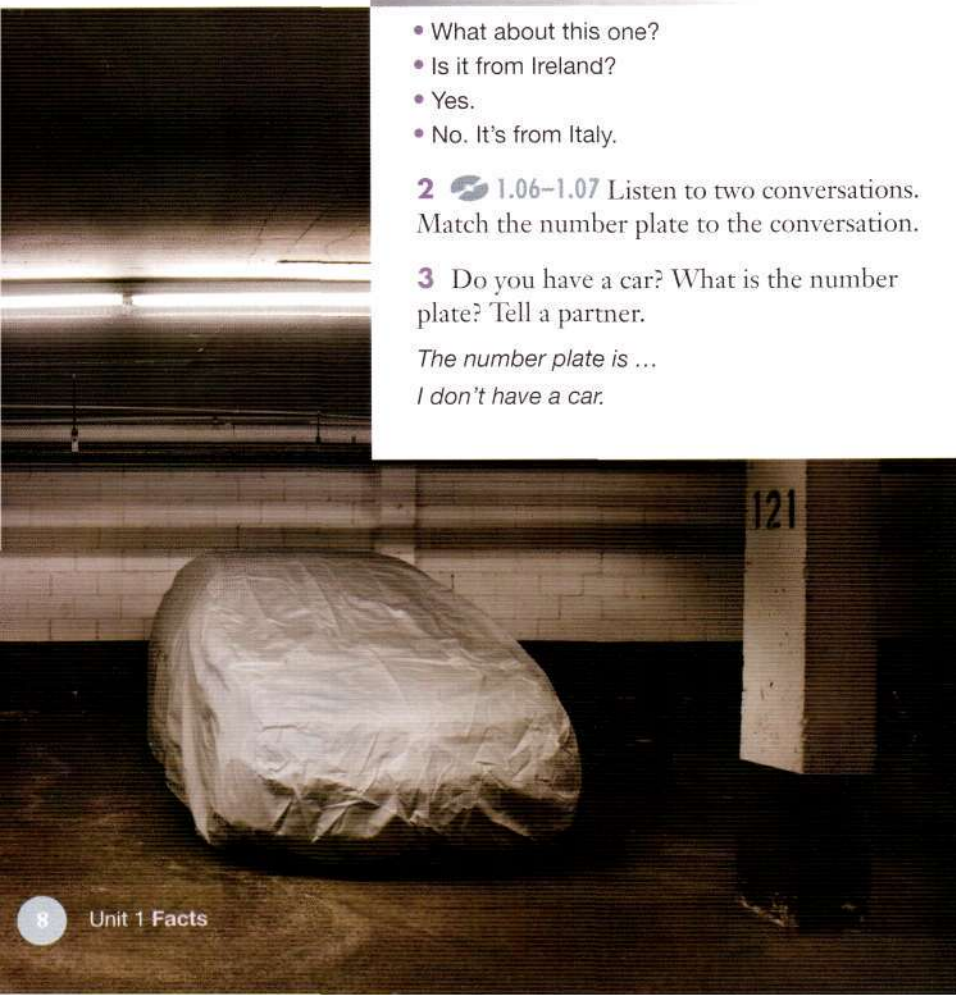
2  1.06-1.07 Listen to two conversations. Match the number plate to the conversation.

3 Do you have a car? What is the number plate? Tell a partner.

*The number plate is ...*

*I don't have a car.*

## Number plates from around the world





## Grammar

*I'm Mr Forbes.*

*It isn't my car.*

*Is it the red car? No, it isn't.*

- we use contractions in speaking and informal writing
- we don't use contractions in formal writing

**1** Circle the correct form of the verb in the two conversations. Then listen again and check your answers.

### Conversation 1

A: Hi. I'm Mr Forbes – *I'm / I* is here for my car.

B: Mr John Forbes?

A: Yes, that's right.

B: *Is / are* your car the BMW?

A: Yes.

B: *Is it / It's* over here.

A: But this isn't my car.

B: Sorry?

A: *It not / It isn't* my car. My car license plate *is / am* 259 HFY.

B: Oh ...

### Conversation 2

A: Hello, we *is / are* here for the car.

B: Your names please?

A: John and Lisa Thomson.

B: Ah yes, the Ford Focus.

A: That's right.

B: *Is the car / The car is* in the car park.  
Number plate ACHT 713.

A: Is it the red car?

B: No it isn't. *It's / They're* the blue Focus over there. Here's the key.

A: OK. Thanks.

**2** Complete the world number plate facts with *is* or *are*.

**Language note:** a number plate is called a *license plate* in American English.

## World number plate facts

Number plates \_\_\_\_\_ a combination of numbers and letters.

In the USA, the number plate \_\_\_\_\_ different in each state.

In Russia, taxi number plates \_\_\_\_\_ yellow and black.

In Pakistan, all number plates \_\_\_\_\_ in the Latin alphabet.

Number plates \_\_\_\_\_ on the front and back of a car.

A personalised number plate \_\_\_\_\_ a special plate with words or a phrase.

In Britain, number plates \_\_\_\_\_ different colours at the front and back. They \_\_\_\_\_ white on the front and yellow at the back.



**G** Grammar focus –  
explanation & more practice of  
the verb *be* on page 136

## Speaking

Work in pairs. Choose **one** of the tasks below.

**A** Practise saying the number plates. A: say a number. B: point to the correct number plate.

**B** Choose one of the conversations from Grammar exercise 1. Read the conversation together. Then close your books and practise the conversation again.

**C** Choose one of the conversations from Grammar exercise 1, but change the information (name, car, number plate, etc). Try to memorise as much as you can. Then practise the conversation.





## Part 3

## Vocabulary

## Numbers 11–99

## Reading

## The power of numbers

## Listening &amp; Vocabulary

## Ordinal numbers

## Listening &amp; Speaking

## Numbers in a sequence



## Vocabulary

1 Put these numbers in the correct order.

- eleven                      • fourteen
- fifteen                    • seventeen
- twenty                    • nineteen
- eighteen                  • thirteen
- twelve                    • sixteen

2 1.08 Listen and check your answers.

3 Write the numbers for the words.

- |              |                 |
|--------------|-----------------|
| 1 twenty-one | 5 sixty-nine    |
| 2 thirty     | 6 seventy-seven |
| 3 forty-six  | 7 eighty        |
| 4 fifty-five | 8 ninety-three  |

4 1.09 Listen and circle the correct number.

- |      |    |      |    |
|------|----|------|----|
| 1 13 | 30 | 5 14 | 40 |
| 2 15 | 50 | 6 16 | 60 |
| 3 17 | 70 | 7 18 | 80 |
| 4 19 | 90 |      |    |

## Reading

1 You are going to read a text about numbers. Check you understand these words.

common    lucky    sequence    unlucky

2 1.10 Read and listen to *The power of numbers* on page 11 and find an example of ...

- 1 a common number in religion.
- 2 a lucky number.
- 3 an unlucky number.
- 4 a number in a sequence.

3 Work in pairs. Ask each other these questions.

- Are there special numbers in your culture? What are they?
- Do you have a lucky / unlucky number? What is it?

## Listening and Vocabulary

1 1.11 Read and listen to these ordinal numbers.

- |                  |         |
|------------------|---------|
| 1 <sup>st</sup>  | first   |
| 2 <sup>nd</sup>  | second  |
| 3 <sup>rd</sup>  | third   |
| 4 <sup>th</sup>  | fourth  |
| 5 <sup>th</sup>  | fifth   |
| 6 <sup>th</sup>  | sixth   |
| 7 <sup>th</sup>  | seventh |
| 8 <sup>th</sup>  | eighth  |
| 9 <sup>th</sup>  | ninth   |
| 10 <sup>th</sup> | tenth   |

**Language note:** use ordinal numbers to say the order or sequence of things or to say the date.

*the first, the second, the third, etc*

*9<sup>th</sup> February*

2 1.12 Read and listen to *One, two, three, five, eight...* on page 11. What are the sixth, seventh and eighth numbers in the sequence?

## Listening and Speaking

1 1.13 Listen and write the numbers.

2 1.14 Work in pairs. What are the next two numbers in each sequence? Listen and check your answers.

## Useful phrases

- The next number is ...
- I think it's ...
- Maybe it's ...

3 Create another sequence and tell your partner. Can they guess the next two numbers in the sequence?



# The power of numbers

## Eight

In China, the number eight is lucky. The word for eight is similar to the word for rich.



8

## Three

Three is a very common number in mathematics, science, religion, education and politics.

## Thirteen

For many people in America and Western Europe, 13 is an unlucky number. In many hotels there is no room 13. On Continental Airlines, Air France, KLM and Iberia there is no row 13.



SEPTEMBER  
FRIDAY

13

Beast, the man who is early when you are late, and late when you are early

## One, two, three, five, eight...

This is a sequence of numbers, called Fibonacci numbers.

The first number in the sequence is 1.

The second number is 2. **1, 2**

The third number is the first number plus the second number. **1, 2, 3**

The fourth number is the second number plus the third number. **1, 2, 3, 5**

Fibonacci numbers are common in nature.



# Unit 1 Facts & Figures

## Part 4

### Reading

#### Telecommunication facts & figures

### Vocabulary

#### Email & website addresses

### Listening

#### Completing forms


### Grammar

#### Possessive adjectives

### Speaking

#### Finding out personal details


## Reading

1  1.15 Read and listen to *Telecommunication facts and figures*. Are the sentences true (T) or false (F)?

- 1 The words for portable phone in Britain and the US are different.
- 2 Britain has more fixed phones per 100 people than the US.
- 3 The emergency number in Britain and the US starts with the number nine.
- 4 The freephone numbers are the same.
- 5 The information number in Britain and the US is the same.

2 What important telephone numbers do you know in your country?

## Vocabulary

1  1.16 Listen and repeat these email and website addresses.

jenny@britmail.co.uk  
baxter21@phonemail.net  
www.bbc.co.uk  
www.independent.co.uk/sport

2 How do we pronounce these symbols?

- 1 @
- 2 .
- 3 www
- 4 /

3 Work in pairs. A: turn to page 126.  
B: turn to page 128. Practise saying some email and website addresses.

## Extend your vocabulary - about

Use *about* before a number when it is not exact.

*In the US it is about 85 per 100 people.*

*This mobile phone is €59.99.*

Look at the sentences and add *about* if it is possible.

- 1 Our teacher is 35.
- 2 The station is ten minutes from the school.
- 3 In China, eight is a lucky number.
- 4 The number before 12 is 11.



## The UK and US ... telecommunication facts and figures

A portable phone is called different things. In the UK it is called a *mobile phone* and in the US it is called a *cell phone*.

The number of fixed telephone lines per 100 people in the UK is 55 out of 100. In the US it is 53 out of 100.

In the UK, the number of mobile phones is about 118 per 100 people. In the US it is about 85 per 100 people.

The emergency number for the police, ambulance and fire department is 999 in the UK.

In the US it is 911.


The international phone code for the UK is 44. For the US it is 1.

In the UK, freephone numbers begin with 080. In the US they begin with 1-800 or 1-888.

The information number (the number to find other numbers) is 118 in the UK. In the US it is 411.



## Listening

1  1.17–1.18 Listen to two conversations. Match a picture a–c to the correct conversation. There is one picture you do not need.

2 Listen again and complete the information.

Name: Mr & Mrs Steinbeck

Nights:

Telephone:

Email:

Room:

Name:

Contact telephone:

Address:

## Grammar

*My name's Steinbeck.  
What's **your** telephone number?  
Here's **their** key.*


- use possessive adjectives such as **my** and **your** before a noun
- use **your** for both singular and plural

1 Rewrite the sentences so they mean the same.

I'm Lucy. *My name's Lucy.*

- 1 You're Keyi.
- 2 His name's Paolo.
- 3 She's Brigitte.
- 4 Our names are Bernard and Julie.
- 5 They're Pablo and Luis.



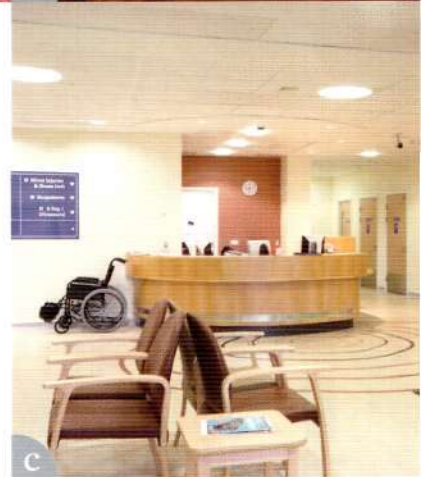
2  1.19 Read a dialogue between a student and a receptionist at a language school. Underline the correct option. Then listen and check your answers.

S = Student R = Receptionist

S: Good morning. *I'm / My* Sergei Andropov and this is *I / my* wife Katya.

R: Hello – welcome to International English. *I / My* name's Antonia. *You / Your* teacher is Don Miller. *He's / His* from Australia. *You're / Your* in classroom 6.

S: Thank you.



 **Grammar focus** – explanation & more practice of possessive adjectives on page 136

## Speaking

Work in pairs. Ask each other questions to find out your partner's ...

- name.
- phone number.
- address.
- email.





## Function globally meeting people



a In a café



b At an airport



c In a hospital



d At a taxi rank

## Warm up

Work in pairs. Do you remember the names of other people in the class? Take it in turns to introduce them.

## Useful phrases

- His name is ...
- Her name is ...
- This is ...
- That is ...

## Listening

1 1.20–1.23 Listen to four conversations. Match each one to a picture. Which conversations are formal (F) and which ones are informal (I)?

2 Listen again and choose the correct option.

Conversation 1: The man and woman *are / aren't* friends.

Conversation 2: It *is / isn't* her first day.

Conversation 3: The man and the woman *are / aren't* in the taxi together.

Conversation 4: The *second / third* man is Mr Brown.

3 Read the audioscript on page 152 and check your answers.

## Language focus: meeting people

1 Put the words in the correct order to make phrases.

- 1 meet you pleased to.
- 2 OK, I'm thanks.
- 3 going how's it?

2 Complete the table with the phrases from exercise 1.

Hello.	Nice to meet you.	I'm fine, thank you.	My name's ...	How are you?
Hi. Hey.	Good to see you.	Fine, thanks.	I'm ...	_____

**Language note:** use *Good to see you* when you meet a friend, **not** when you meet someone for the first time.

3 Tick (✓) the more formal expressions in the table.

## Speaking

Work in pairs. Choose **one** of the tasks below.

**A** Look at the audioscript on page 152. Read the conversations together. Choose one conversation and try to memorise it. Then practise it.

**B** Look at the audioscript on page 152. Write similar formal and informal conversations. Then practise them.



## Warm up


**1** Think of five well-known people from different countries. Write their names and where they are from.

**2** Work in pairs. Tell your partner about the people you wrote.

*His name is ... He's from ...*

*Her name is ... She's from ...*

## Listening

**1**  **1.24– 1.33** Listen to ten people saying their names and where they are from. Tick (✓) the places you hear.

Austria China Germany Italy Mexico

Moscow Rome Russia Saudi Arabia

Switzerland Tokyo Ukraine



**2** Listen again and complete the information about each speaker.

Speaker 1: Aki from \_\_\_\_\_

Speaker 2: Menahi from \_\_\_\_\_

Speaker 3: Christina from \_\_\_\_\_

Speaker 4: Hani from \_\_\_\_\_, from \_\_\_\_\_

Speaker 5: Elodie from \_\_\_\_\_, from \_\_\_\_\_

Speaker 6: Liliya from \_\_\_\_\_

Speaker 7: Sara from \_\_\_\_\_

Speaker 8: Maxim from \_\_\_\_\_, from \_\_\_\_\_

Speaker 9: Elizabeth from \_\_\_\_\_

Speaker 10: Amy from \_\_\_\_\_

## Language focus: talking about where you are from

Look at the different ways the speakers say where they are from. Make similar sentences about yourself.

- I'm from Tokyo.  
*I'm from ...*
- I come from Russia.  
*I come from ...*
- I am from Saudi Arabia, I am from Riyadh. Riyadh is the capital of Saudi Arabia.  
*I am from ..., I am from ...*
- I come from Switzerland, from Geneva.  
*I come from ..., from ...*
- I live in Rome.  
*I live in ...*

## Speaking

- Stand up and introduce yourself to the person next to you. Say where you are from.  
*Hi, I'm Marc. I'm from Italy.*
- Move to another person in the class and say where you are from in a different way.  
*Hello, I'm Marc. I come from Italy, from Turin.*
- Repeat with three more people from the class.



## Reading

- 1 Izaura is on holiday in the US. Read the form. Is it ...  
 a a travel booking form?    b a US immigration form?

Family name: <b>OLIVEIRA</b>	
First (Given) name: <b>IZAURA</b>	Date of birth (mo/day/yr) : <b>11 / 14 / 86</b>
Country of citizenship: <b>BRAZIL</b>	Sex (male or female) : <b>FEMALE</b>
Passport number: <b>CM 278193</b>	Airline and flight number: <b>AA 125</b>
Country where you live: <b>ENGLAND</b>	City where you boarded: <b>LONDON</b>
Address while in the United States (number and street): <b>16, HARTFIELD AVE</b>	
City and state: <b>ALBANY, NEW YORK</b>	

- 2 Complete the text with information from the form.

My name's (1) \_\_\_\_\_. My date of birth is (2) \_\_\_\_\_. My flight is from (3) \_\_\_\_\_ and the flight number is (4) \_\_\_\_\_. My address in the US is (5) \_\_\_\_\_.

## Writing skills: using capital letters

- 1 Read the rules about capital letters in English.

Use capital letters ...

- to fill in forms.
- at the beginning of a sentence.
- with the pronoun I.
- with postcodes and the US, the UK.

Start these words with a capital letter:

- a names (of people, buildings)
- b roads and streets
- c days of the week
- d months
- e nationalities and languages
- f cities and towns
- g titles of books, films and newspapers

- 2 Match the words in the box to the rules a–g.

April    Global Elementary    High St.    Nelson Mandela  
 Russian    Saturday    Tokyo

- 3 Add capital letters to the text.

my name is andrea hunziker. my date of birth is 16th july 1972.  
 i'm married. my address is 3, station rd, nottingham, ng3 6ae, uk.  
 my telephone number is 0115 9691862 and my email address is  
 andreahun3@hotmail.com.

## Language focus: personal information

Match the words 1–8 to the information a–h.

- |                    |                             |
|--------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1 address          | a Hunziker                  |
| 2 date of birth    | b Andrea                    |
| 3 email address    | c 16.07.1972                |
| 4 first name       | d married                   |
| 5 marital status   | e 3, Station Rd, Nottingham |
| 6 postcode         | f 0115 9691862              |
| 7 surname          | g andreahun3@hotmail.com    |
| 8 telephone number | h NG3 6AE                   |

## Preparing to write

Work in pairs. Ask and answer questions using the personal information words in the Language focus section. Use the useful phrases to help you.

A: What's your address?

B: My address is ....

### Personal information

- What's your surname / first name / date of birth etc?
- I'm married / single / divorced / widowed.
- My surname / date of birth / postcode etc. is ...

## Writing

Complete the form with information about you and your partner.

	You	Your partner
Surname		
First name		
Date of birth		
Marital status		
Address		
Postcode		
Telephone number		
Email address		



## Grammar

1 Write *a* or *an*.

1 \_\_\_ airport 2 \_\_\_ email 3 \_\_\_ hospital 4 \_\_\_ key

2 Write the plural forms of the nouns.

1 an address \_\_\_ 3 a bus \_\_\_  
2 a family \_\_\_ 4 a name \_\_\_

3 Complete the conversation with the words in the box.

am are her is isn't my our your

- A: Good morning. (1) \_\_\_ you Mr Chen?  
 B: No, I (2) \_\_\_ Longfei Jin and this is (3) \_\_\_ daughter Xing Yan.  
 A: Welcome to the Clifton Hotel, Mr Jin. (4) \_\_\_ room is number 23. Here is the key.  
 B: Thank you. And Xing Yan? (5) \_\_\_ she in Room 24?  
 A: No, she (6) \_\_\_. She's in room 25. This is (7) \_\_\_ key.  
 B: Thank you. Here are (8) \_\_\_ passports.  
 A: Thank you very much. Enjoy your stay.

## Vocabulary

1 Write the answers as words.

*five + seven = twelve*

- 1 nine + six = \_\_\_  
 2 thirteen + fourteen = \_\_\_  
 3 eleven + thirty-seven = \_\_\_  
 4 thirty-two + nineteen = \_\_\_  
 5 sixty-three + thirty-six = \_\_\_

2 Complete the sentences about the sentence below.

For many people in America and Western Europe, thirteen is an unlucky number.

*Western is the seventh word in the sentence.*

- 1 *Many* is \_\_\_ word in the sentence.  
 2 *Thirteen* is \_\_\_ word in the sentence.  
 3 *For* is \_\_\_ word in the sentence.  
 4 *America* is \_\_\_ word in the sentence.  
 5 *People* is \_\_\_ word in the sentence.

## Speaking

1 Work in pairs. A: You are a guest at a hotel. B: You are the hotel receptionist. Ask the guest their name, address, phone number, email and car number plate. Tell the guest their room number. Then swap roles and repeat.

2 Work with a partner. A: say a letter. B: say an English word starting with the letter and spell it. Swap roles and repeat. Continue with more letters.

## Classroom language

1 Translate the classroom instructions into your language. Use a dictionary if necessary.

- \* Listen.
- \* Repeat.
- \* Write.
- \* Read.
- \* Open/close your book.
- \* Work in pairs.
- \* Ask your partner.
- \* Complete the sentences.
- \* Put the words in the correct order.
- \* Match the words to the pictures.
- \* Circle the correct answer.

2 Follow the instructions.

- 1 Put the words in the correct order.  
 yellow plates number are  
 2 Match the numbers to the words.  
 1 three  
 2 one  
 3 two  
 3 Underline the correct answer.  
 two + two = four/eight/twelve  
 4 Complete the question.  
 What's your phone \_\_\_ ?

3 Match the questions 1–4 to the answers a–d.

- 1 How do you spell *eight*?  
 2 What does *eight* mean?  
 3 How do you pronounce this word?  
 4 How do you say *acht* in English?  
 a It means the number after seven.  
 b E-I-G-H-T  
 c It's *eight* in English.  
 d /eit/

4 Work with a partner. Ask questions about the words in the box. Then ask about other words from the unit. Use the questions in exercise 3.

address car golf hotel juice key lucky  
 name number sandwich telephone thirteen

What does *address* mean?



## Part 1

## Vocabulary &amp; Listening

## Megacities

## Pronunciation

## Nationalities

## Listening

## Cities and countries

## Grammar

Prepositions (*from, in, near*)

## Speaking

## Where you're from

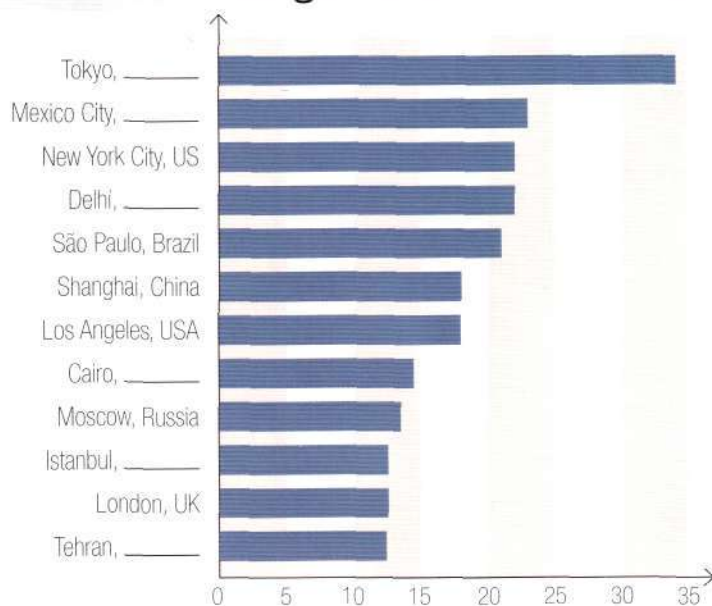
## Vocabulary and Listening

1 Read the definition of a megacity. Then complete the graph with the countries in the box. Do you know any of these megacities?

**megacity** (*noun*) – a city with more than ten million people

Egypt India Iran Japan  
Mexico Turkey

## Megacities of the world



2 1.34 Read and listen to six introductions of people from different countries. Notice the nationality words.

- 1 I'm from Bangkok, Thailand. I'm Thai.
- 2 She's from Beijing, China. She's Chinese.
- 3 He's from Berlin, Germany. He's German.
- 4 They're from Warsaw, Poland. They're Polish.
- 5 We're from Rio de Janeiro, Brazil. We're Brazilian.
- 6 He's from Amsterdam, Holland. He's Dutch.

3 Complete the table with the nationalities in exercise 2.

Suffix	Nationality word	
<b>-an</b>	American	Mexican
<b>-ese</b>	Japanese	_____
<b>-ish</b>	Turkish	_____
<b>Other</b>	French	Czech

## Pronunciation

1 1.35 Listen and check your answers to Vocabulary and Listening exercise 3.

2 1.36 Listen to these nationality words. Which nationality word is stressed on the last syllable (the suffix)?

Italian Russian Scottish  
Swedish Vietnamese

3 Say the other nationality words in Vocabulary and Listening exercise 3. Pay attention to the word stress.

4 Where are you from? What's your nationality? Tell a partner.






## Listening

1 Match the cities to the countries. Then look at the world map. What's different?

- |          |           |
|----------|-----------|
| 1 Paris  | a Germany |
| 2 Moscow | b UK      |
| 3 Oxford | c Spain   |
| 4 Berlin | d France  |
| 5 Madrid | e Russia  |

2  1.37–1.39 Listen to three conversations. Match the conversations to a place below.

- a at a hotel   b at an airport   c at a party

3 Listen again and circle the correct option in each pair of sentences.

- He's *Russian* / *Scottish*.  
He's from *Moscow, Russia* / *Moscow near Glasgow*.
- They're from *Paris* / *France*.  
They're *not French* / *French*.
- He's *from Madrid* / *not from Mexico*.  
He's *Spanish* / *Mexican*.

## Grammar

We're **from** Paris, Texas **in** the US.  
It's a small place 50 km **from** Glasgow.  
It's **near** Dallas.

- use **from** to say your country or home town or to say the distance from another place
- use **in** for countries or regions
- use **near** to say it is close to another place

1 Complete the dialogue with *from*, *near* or *in*.

A: Where are you from?

B: I'm \_\_\_\_\_ Brazil.

A: Where in Brazil?

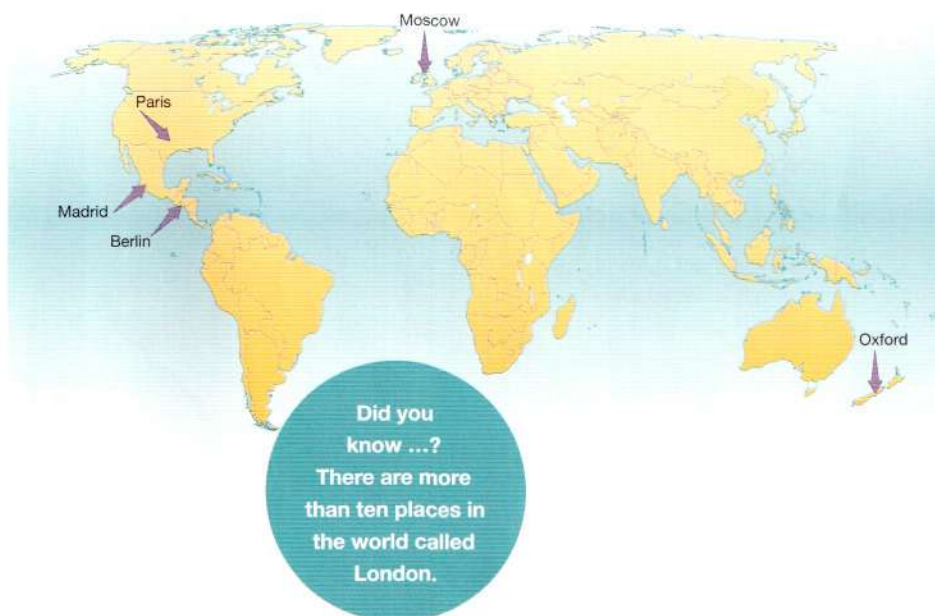
B: Petrópolis. It's about 60 kilometres \_\_\_\_\_ Rio de Janeiro. And you?

A: I'm \_\_\_\_\_ Bursa.

B: Where's that?


A: It's \_\_\_\_\_ Turkey. It's near Istanbul.

## The 'other' Paris, Moscow, Madrid, Oxford and Berlin




2 Complete the information about yourself. Then tell a partner.

I'm from \_\_\_\_\_ in \_\_\_\_\_.  
It's about \_\_\_\_\_ kilometres from \_\_\_\_\_.

 **Grammar focus** – explanation & more practice of prepositions on page 138

## Speaking

1  1.40 Listen to the conversation. Cross (X) the words you don't hear.

A: What's your name?

B: My name's Monika.

A: Where are you from?

B: I'm from Giessen.

A: Where's that?

B: It's in Germany, near Frankfurt.

2 Work in pairs. Have a similar conversation with information about you.





# Unit 2 Where & When

## Part 2

### Vocabulary

#### Describing places

### Reading

#### The created capital

### Grammar

#### Wh- questions (1)

### Speaking

#### Important factors in choosing a place to live

## Vocabulary

1 Match the sentences to the pictures below.

It's big.  
It's busy.  
It's small.  
It's quiet.  
It's noisy.  
It's old.  
It's modern.

**Language note:** we use the phrase *What's it like?* to ask for a description of a place.

*What's it like?*


*It's a quiet town. It's a big city.*

2 Think of two places in your country. Write sentences to describe them.

*Lisbon, Portugal: It's a big city. It's very noisy.*  
*Sintra, Portugal: It's a small place. It's quiet.*

## Reading

1 What's the capital of your country?

2  1.41 Read and listen to *The created capital* on page 21. Check you understand the words in bold.

3 Read the text again. Are these statements true (T) or false (F)?

- 1 Astana is an old city.
- 2 Astana means capital city.
- 3 Astana is a megacity.
- 4 Washington DC is a created capital.

### Extend your vocabulary – also and too

Use *also* and *too* to add an additional fact or idea. Use *also* after the verb *be* or *too* at the end of a sentence.

*Washington DC is also a created capital.*

*Washington DC is a created capital too.*

Rewrite the sentences with *also* or *too*.

He is a teacher. (doctor)

*He is also a doctor. / He is a doctor too.*

- 1 I am an English student. (Spanish student)
- 2 It's a big city. (beautiful city)
- 3 It's a capital city. (megacity)



a



b



# The created capital

In some countries the capital city is very old. In other countries the capital city is more modern. Some countries decide to **create** a new capital city.

One example of a created capital is Astana. Created in 1997, Astana is the capital of Kazakhstan in central Asia. The word Astana means capital city in the Kazakh language. It's a modern city in the centre of the country. About 600,000 people live in Astana.

Countries create a capital city for **geographical** reasons (the capital is in the centre of the country) or **political** reasons (where there is more than one possible city).

Washington DC is also a created capital (the first capital of the United States was Philadelphia) and there are many others around the world.

## Grammar

*Where is Astana?*

*What is the population?*

- use **what** to ask about things
- use **where** to ask about places
- use **how old** to ask about age
- use **why** to ask about reasons
- use **when** to ask about time
- the order is usually  
question word + *be* + subject

**1** Circle the correct option.

- 1 *What / Where* is the name of the city?  
Astana.
- 2 *How / What* country is it in?  
Kazakhstan.
- 3 *What / Where* is the capital?  
In the centre of the country.
- 4 *What / Why* is the population?  
About 600,000.
- 5 *How / What* is it like?  
It's modern, with lots of new buildings.

**2** Work in pairs. A: turn to page 126. B: turn to page 128. Read about two other created capitals.



**Grammar focus** – explanation & more practice of *Wh*-questions on page 138

## Speaking

**1** What is important to you in a place to live? Put the items in order from very important (1) to not important (6).

good public transport  
shopping centres  
friendly people  
nice weather  
green spaces  
good schools

**2** Work in pairs. Compare your lists.





## Part 3

Listening

Telling the time

Vocabulary

Daily routine

Reading &amp; Listening

The cross-border  
commuter

Grammar

Present simple (3<sup>rd</sup>  
person)

Pronunciation

/s/ /z/ /vz/

Speaking

A typical day



## Listening

1 1.42 Listen and repeat the times.

2 1.43–1.45 Listen to three conversations and tick (✓) the times you hear.

3 Listen again. Match the conversations 1–3 to the subjects a–d. There is one subject you do not need.

- a The time a train goes
- b The time a party starts
- c The time of a business meeting
- d The time a film is on

4 Write down three times. Dictate them to a partner.

## Vocabulary

1 Complete the table with the words in the box.

a coffee   dinner   home   home  
to the gym

go	to work / university	to a party	<u>home</u>	_____	to bed
have	breakfast	lunch	_____	a meeting	_____
get	up	to work	_____		

2 Put the phrases from exercise 1 in order to make a typical day for you. Then compare with a partner.

*I get up, I have breakfast, I go to work ...*

## Reading and Listening

1 1.46 Read *The cross-border commuter*. Then listen and complete the table for Laura's Spanish day.

## The cross-border commuter

**Laura Clunie** is English. She lives in London, and she works for an international company. Laura works three days a week in London, but she works in Barcelona on Thursdays and Fridays. Laura is a new Euro commuter – a person who lives in one country and works in a different country. Her daily life is different in the two countries.

Laura's British day	get up	7.00am
	have lunch	12.30pm
	have dinner	6.30pm
	go to bed	11.00pm
Laura's Spanish day	get up	_____
	have lunch	_____
	have dinner	_____
	go to bed	_____
Your _____ day	get up	_____
	have lunch	_____
	have dinner	_____
	go to bed	_____

2 What about you? Complete the table in exercise 1. Then compare your daily routine with a partner.



Studies say there will be more than 1.5 million Euro commuters by 2020.

The most popular Euro commutes are Paris – London and Barcelona – London.

## Grammar

I normally **have** lunch at about 12.30.  
Laura **gets up** at 8.00 for work.  
She **finishes** work at 7.30.

- use the present simple to talk about routines
- for *he / she / it* add *s* or *es* to the verb

1 Read the two texts about Laura and underline the verbs. What's the difference between the verbs in text A and text B?

### Text A

When I'm in London, I get up at 7.00 for work.  
I normally have lunch at about 12.30 or 1.00. I finish work at 5.30 and have dinner at 6.30.  
I normally go to bed about 10.30 or 11.00.

### Text B

When she's in Barcelona, Laura gets up at 8.00 for work. She normally has lunch at about 2.00. She finishes work at 7.30 and has dinner at 9.00. She normally goes to bed about midnight.

## Useful language

- 12.00pm = noon • 12.00am = midnight

2 Write a similar text about your teacher. Don't ask questions, guess.

My teacher gets up at ...

3 Listen to your teacher talk about a typical day. Check your texts.

**G** Grammar focus – explanation & more practice of the present simple on page 138

## Pronunciation

1 1.47 Listen and repeat the sounds and words.

/s/	/z/	/ɪz/
gets	has	finishes
books	pens	buses

2 1.48 Listen and write the words in the correct column.

airports   clocks   exercises   keys  
phones   starts   watches

3 1.49 Try to say the phrases quickly. Then listen and repeat.

Clocks and watches.  
These watches are Swiss watches.  
Breakfasts, lunches and dinners.  
She starts and finishes early.

## Speaking

1 Choose four of the words below and make sentences about what times you do these things.

I normally get up at 7.00.

bed   breakfast   coffee   dinner  
get up   gym   home   lunch   work

2 Work in groups of three. Compare your sentences with the other students in the group.

A: I normally get up at 7.00.

B: Me too.

C: 7.00? That's really early. I get up at 9.30.





# Unit 2 Where & When

## Part 4

Vocabulary & Listening

Time & dates

Reading

Calendars from around the world

Grammar

Present simple (negative)

Writing

Favourite days

## Vocabulary and Listening

1 Read the text about time. Then complete the chart with the words from the text in bold. Do you agree with the text?

Seconds are short. **Minutes** are long.

Hours are short. **Days** are long.

Weeks are short. **Months** are long.

Years are short. **Decades** are long.

**Life** is short.

60 seconds	= 1 _____
60 minutes	= 1 _____
24 _____	= 1 _____
7 _____	= 1 _____
4 _____	= 1 _____
12 _____	= 1 _____
10 _____	= 1 _____

2 Put the words in the box into two groups (months and days). Then put them in order in the table.

April August December February  
Friday January July June March  
May Monday November October  
Saturday Sunday September  
Thursday Tuesday Wednesday

Months	Days
<i>January</i>	

3 1.50 Listen and check your answers. Underline the stressed syllable.

**Language note:** to say the date in English, use ordinal numbers.

1 January = *1<sup>st</sup> January*

4 1.51 Listen and circle the correct alternative.

- |                             |                            |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1 13 <sup>th</sup> July     | 13 <sup>th</sup> June      |
| 2 12 <sup>th</sup> August   | 20 <sup>th</sup> August    |
| 3 21 <sup>st</sup> May      | 31 <sup>st</sup> May       |
| 4 2 <sup>nd</sup> October   | 22 <sup>nd</sup> October   |
| 5 3 <sup>rd</sup> September | 30 <sup>th</sup> September |
| 6 22 <sup>nd</sup> March    | 2 <sup>nd</sup> March      |

5 Work in pairs. A: turn to page 126.  
B: turn to page 128. Dictate some dates to your partner.

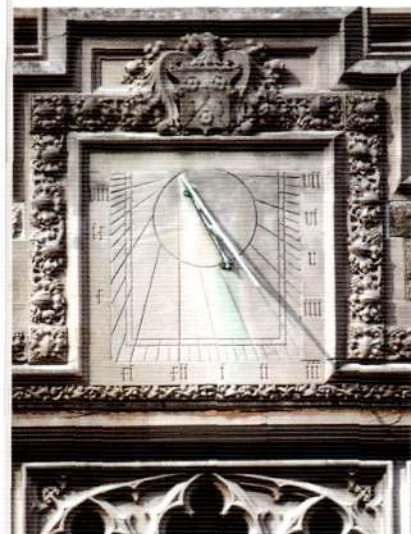
## Reading

1 Quickly read *When is New Year's Day?* on page 25. Tick (✓) the parts of the world the text mentions.

Western countries  
Latin American countries  
South Asia  
Islamic countries

2 1.52 Read and listen to the text again. Which calendar ...

- has twelve months?
- follows the sun and moon?
- follows the moon?
- follows the sun?
- begins in October or November?
- begins in January?






## Grammar

The Islamic calendar **doesn't** use the sun.  
The Indian year **doesn't** begin in January.

- form the negative with *don't* / *doesn't* + infinitive

1 Circle the correct option in each sentence.

- The Gregorian calendar *don't use* / *doesn't use* the moon to measure time.
- The Islamic calendar *don't use* / *doesn't use* the sun to measure time.
- The Islamic and Indian calendars *don't start* / *doesn't start* on 1 January.

2  1.53 Complete the text with the correct form of the verb in brackets. Then listen and check your answers.

## The Chinese calendar

The Chinese calendar \_\_\_\_\_ (use) the sun and the moon. It is different because it \_\_\_\_\_ (not count) years infinitely. On a Chinese calendar the years \_\_\_\_\_ (have) names: the Year of the Rat, Year of the Pig, etc and the cycle \_\_\_\_\_ (repeat) every 12 years. The Chinese New Year \_\_\_\_\_ (not start) on 1 January, it \_\_\_\_\_ (start) between January and February.



3 Complete these sentences so they are true for you.

I *don't go to work on Sundays*.

I *don't ... on Sundays*.

I *don't ... in August*.

I *don't ... in December*.

We *don't have English class ...*

I *don't ...*

My teacher *doesn't ...*

 **Grammar focus** – explanation & more practice of the present simple on page 138

## Writing

1 Read the text about favourite days below.

My favourite day is Thursday  
because I don't work and I have  
lunch with my friends.

My least favourite day is Monday  
because I start work very early.

2 Write about your favourite and least favourite day. Use *because* to explain your reasons.

My favourite day is ... because ...

My least favourite day is ...  
because ...



# When is NEW YEAR'S DAY?

## Calendars from around the world

The Gregorian calendar (used by most Western countries) has 12 months and 365.242184 days. A year is the time it takes the earth to go around the sun. On a Gregorian calendar the New Year begins on 1 January.

The Islamic calendar also has 12 months, but it doesn't use the sun. It uses the moon. The New Year in an Islamic calendar begins in the month of Muharram – usually between November and February on a Gregorian calendar.

The Indian calendar also has 12 months. It uses the sun and the moon. But in the Indian calendar, the New Year doesn't begin in January. It begins in the holiday of Diwali. This is a very important festival in South Asia. Diwali is usually in October or November on a Gregorian calendar.





## Warm up

Work in pairs. Describe the pictures.

### Useful language

- at night
- busy
- in the country
- modern
- old
- buses
- in the city
- in the daytime
- new
- people

### Useful phrases

- This photo is of a ...
- In this photo the bus station is ...
- I think this bus station is in ...

## Listening

1 1.54–1.56 Listen to three conversations. Match each one to a destination in the box. There is one destination you do not need.

Mexico City   Ottawa   the airport   the city centre

2 Listen again and circle the time you hear.

- 1 The bus is at 5.50 / 5.15.
- 2 The bus is at 2.15 / 2.50.
- 3 The time is now 10.30 / 10.13.

## Language focus: asking and telling the time

1 1.57 Put the words in the correct order to make two ways of asking the time. Then listen and check.

- 1 time what is the?
- 2 what it time is?

2 Look at the diagram of how to tell the time in English. How do you say these times?

6.45 *six forty-five / a quarter to seven*

7.15

8.30

10.10

10.50

9.35



## Speaking

Work with a partner. Choose **one** of the tasks below.

**A** Work in pairs. Write five times on a piece of paper. A: ask B the time. B: tell A the first time on your list. Then swap roles and repeat. Continue with all the times.

**B** Choose one of the pictures of bus stations. Prepare a conversation. Practise and present your conversation to another group.

### Useful language

- Excuse me ...
- What time is the bus for ...
- When is the bus for ...
- When is the next bus to ...?
- What's the time?





When the Anglo-Saxons arrived in Britain, in the fifth century, speaking the original English there were just a few hundred of them. Today, the English-speaking population of the world is more than two billion ...



### Glossary

**billion** (number) - 1,000,000,000

**million** (number) - 1,000,000

### Warm up

1 Look at the title and list of country names. What are the missing letters?

### Countries with E... as the official lan...

Can...  
Ind...  
Irel...  
Jamai...  
Ken...  
Pakis...  
Singa...  
Zimbab...

2 Can you think of any other countries for this list?

### Reading

Read the text and match the numbers to the words.

- 1 1000 million (1,000,000,000)
  - 2 400 million (400,000,000)
  - 3 a few hundred (100s)
  - 4 600 million (600,000,000)
  - 5 2 billion (2,000,000,000)
- a English native speakers today
  - b Non-native speakers of English
  - c Speakers from other countries that have a relationship with Britain or the US
  - d The Anglo-Saxons who arrived in England
  - e English-speaking population today

### An inner circle

Over 400 million native speakers in countries including Britain, the USA, Canada, Australia, New Zealand and South Africa.

### An outer circle

At least 600 million people have learned English in countries that have a special relationship with Britain or the USA. For example Nigeria, the Philippines, India and more than 50 other countries.

### An expanding circle

More than 1000 million non-native speakers in other countries: Europe, Latin America, Japan, Russia and China.

### 1 native speaker : 4 non-native speakers

For every native speaker of English today, there are about four non-native speakers: 400 million native speakers but over 16,000 million non-native speakers.

### Language focus

What do the phrases mean? Choose the correct meaning. Use a dictionary to help you.

- 1 **more than** 400 million    < 400 million  
                                         > 400 million
- 2 **over** 600 million         < 600 million  
                                         > 600 million
- 3 **just** a few hundred       only a few hundred  
                                         > a few hundred
- 4 **about** two billion         two billion (+ or -)  
                                         < two billion

### Speaking

Work in pairs and discuss the questions.

- How many different languages do people speak in your country?
- Do people speak your language in other countries?



## UNIT 2 Writing describing a routine

### Reading

1 Read about Fariha's routine. Why is she busy at the moment?



I have a new job in a hotel. I get up at six fifteen and have breakfast at seven o'clock. I go to work at eight o'clock. I go home at one o'clock and then I have lunch. In the afternoon, I do the housework. I make dinner at six o'clock. We have dinner at seven thirty. After that, I watch TV or read. On Wednesdays, I go to my English class. I go to bed about ten thirty. At weekends, I do exercise and meet my friends. I visit my family on Sundays.

2 Complete the sentences.

- 1 Fariha gets up at \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 At seven o'clock she \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 She does the housework in \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 She makes dinner at \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 She goes to her English class \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 She goes to bed \_\_\_\_\_.

### Writing skills: using full stops and commas

We use a full stop at the end of a sentence. A full stop is called a *period* in the US.

We use commas to separate parts of the sentence.  
*in the morning, on Saturdays ...*

- 1 Find four commas in Fariha's description.
- 2 Add twelve full stops to Fariha's description. Write capital letters to start new sentences.
- 3 Correct the punctuation in the text below and add capital letters.

Fariha has a new job, she works in a hotel, she gets up very early, she goes to work at eight o'clock, after that she has lunch, in the afternoon she watches TV, she goes to bed about eleven o'clock

### Language focus: time expressions

1 Match phrases 1–4 to a–d.

- |                   |                    |
|-------------------|--------------------|
| 1 after breakfast | a in the evening   |
| 2 after lunch     | b then             |
| 3 after dinner    | c in the afternoon |
| 4 after that      | d in the morning   |

2 Complete the texts about Wieslaw's routine with expressions in the box.

After breakfast   and then   In the afternoon  
In the evening   On weekdays

(1) \_\_\_\_\_ I get up at about seven o'clock and have breakfast at about eight o'clock. (2) \_\_\_\_\_ I go to college. I have lunch at twelve thirty. (3) \_\_\_\_\_ I study in the library. I go home at five o'clock. (4) \_\_\_\_\_ I have dinner. (5) \_\_\_\_\_ I usually watch TV. I go to bed early, about ten o'clock.

After dinner   after lunch   after that   In the morning  
On Saturdays

(6) \_\_\_\_\_ I get up late, at about eleven o'clock and (7) \_\_\_\_\_ I have breakfast. (8) \_\_\_\_\_ I do my homework or listen to music. I have lunch at about one o'clock and (9) \_\_\_\_\_ I play football. I have dinner at about eight o'clock. (10) \_\_\_\_\_ I normally meet friends and we go to a party.

### Preparing to write

- 1 Make notes about your daily routine.
- 2 Work in pairs. Tell your partner about your daily routine. Use the useful phrases to help you.

#### Time expressions

- On Mondays / Saturdays / weekdays ...
- In the morning / afternoon / evening ...
- On Sunday mornings / Monday afternoons / Saturday evenings ...
- At the weekend ...
- After breakfast / lunch / dinner ...
- After that / Then ...

### Writing

Write about your daily routine. Use your notes and the useful phrases to help you.



## Grammar

1 Put the words in the correct order to make questions.

- 1 you where from are?
- 2 he old is how?
- 3 is capital the Japan what of?
- 4 English when class your is?
- 5 here you why are?

2 Complete the text about Martin's day using the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

Martin normally (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (*get*) up at about 7.00 and (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) to work at 8.30. He (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (*not have*) a big lunch. He (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (*finish*) work at 5.00 and (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (*have*) dinner at 7.00.

## Vocabulary

1 Correct one word in each group.

- 1 Italian American Turkian Mexican
- 2 Polish Swedish Russish Scottish
- 3 Chinese Hollandese Vietnamese Japanese
- 4 Thai French Czech Germanch

2 Write the opposite adjectives.

- 1 a noisy place, a q \_\_\_\_\_ place
- 2 a big town, a s \_\_\_\_\_ town
- 3 an old city, a m \_\_\_\_\_ city

3 Write the dates in full.

- |         |                               |
|---------|-------------------------------|
| 4/10    | <i>the fourth of November</i> |
| 1 1/1   | _____                         |
| 2 13/3  | _____                         |
| 3 20/7  | _____                         |
| 4 22/12 | _____                         |

## Speaking and Writing

1 Write four sentences about your daily routine. One must be false. Work in small groups. Take it in turns to read out your sentences and try to guess which one is false.

2 Write down a new name, city and country for yourself. Work in small groups. Imagine you are at a party. Ask each other questions to find out your new identities.

## Working with other people

If you don't understand someone, say *Pardon?* or *Sorry?* You can also use other questions and phrases.

*Can you speak more slowly, please?*

*Sorry, I don't understand.*

*Can you repeat that, please?*

1 Work in pairs. A: talk about your town or country. B: use some of the phrases in the box above. Then swap roles and repeat.

2 Look up the verbs in the box in a dictionary. Then work in pairs and circle the correct answers.

check   communicate   correct   explain

- 1 Who explains the meaning of words in class?  
*the teacher / the students / the teacher or the students*
- 2 Who corrects mistakes in class?  
*the teacher / the students / the teacher or the students*
- 3 Who checks homework?  
*the teacher / the students / the teacher or the students*
- 4 Who communicates in class?  
*the teacher / the students / the teacher or the students*

3 In class you can help each other in different ways. Look at the list and tick (✓) the things you do. Then work in small groups and compare your lists.

- \* I explain words to my partner.
- \* I ask my partner to explain words.
- \* I correct my partner.
- \* I ask my partner to correct me.
- \* I explain how to do activities.
- \* I explain grammar rules.
- \* I check answers with my partner.
- \* I use new language to communicate.



## Part 1

Vocabulary

Family

Reading

Shakespeare's tragic families

Grammar

Possessive 's

Writing

Your family

## Vocabulary

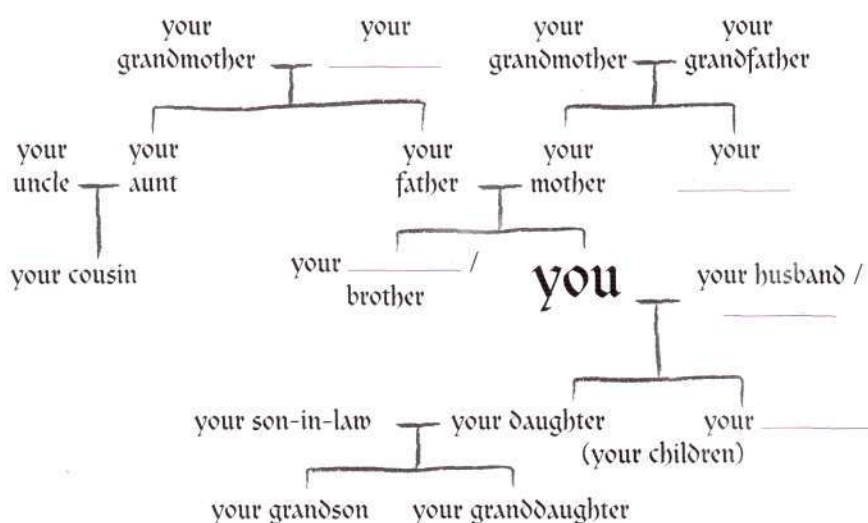
1 Complete the family tree with the words in the box.

aunt grandfather sister son wife

2 Work in pairs. Ask each other these questions.

How many ... do you have?

- brothers
- sisters
- cousins
- uncles
- aunts
- children
- grandchildren



## Reading

1 You are going to read about some famous families in English literature. Before you read, check you understand these words.

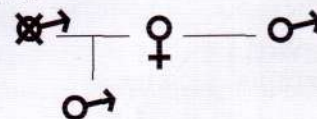
dead enemy jealous  
land power revenge

2 1.58 Read and listen to *Shakespeare's tragic families* on page 31. Are these statements true (T) or false (F)?

- 1 King Lear has two daughters.
- 2 Hamlet is from Denmark.
- 3 Hamlet's mother isn't married.
- 4 Lady Macbeth and Macbeth are brother and sister.
- 5 Juliet's last name is Capulet.
- 6 Iago is married to Desdemona.

3 Read the texts again and match the families to the diagrams of the family trees below.

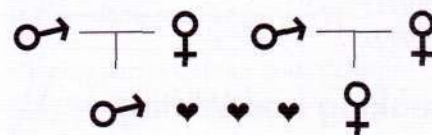
1 *Hamlet*



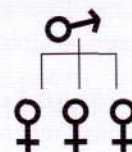
2



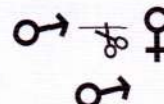
3



4



5



4 Do you know any of these stories?





## Grammar

*King Lear's daughters*

*Hamlet's mother*

*Romeo's girlfriend*

*Her parents' names are Lord and Lady Capulet*

- use 's to show possession
- if a word ends in s, add '

**1** Look at the texts again. Find the answers to these questions.

Who is ...

- 1 Cordelia's father?
- 2 Hamlet's uncle?
- 3 Macbeth's wife?
- 4 Romeo's girlfriend?
- 5 Desdemona's husband?

**2** Complete the texts with possessive 's. There are four missing.



### Julius Caesar

He is Emperor of Rome, but for how long? Are Caesar friends now his enemies? Calpurnia, Caesar wife, thinks they are. A story of power and revenge.

### Anthony and Cleopatra

Anthony wife Fluvia is dead. He now lives in Egypt with the Queen Cleopatra. But Anthony old friend Octavius wants him to return to Rome. A story of love and power.



**3** Choose four members of your family and tell a partner their names.

my mother

*My mother's name is Sandra.*

my father

my grandparents

my brother / sister

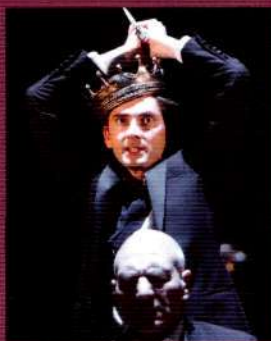
my grandchildren

my children

**G Grammar focus** – explanation & more practice of possessive 's on page 140.

# Shakespeare's tragic families

**King Lear:** King Lear loves his three daughters: Cordelia, Regan and Goneril. But do the daughters love their father? A story of land, money and power.



**Hamlet:** In Denmark, Prince

Hamlet's father is dead, and his mother Gertrude is now married to Claudius – Hamlet's uncle. A story of a son's love and revenge.

**Macbeth:** A story of Macbeth and his wife, Lady Macbeth. Lady

Macbeth wants power, and she wants her husband to be the king. A story of revenge and power.

**Romeo and Juliet:** Romeo is the son of Lord and Lady Montague. Juliet is the daughter of Lord and Lady Capulet. Romeo and Juliet are boyfriend and girlfriend. But their families are enemies. A love story.

**Othello:** Iago is Othello's friend, or is he? He makes trouble for Othello and his wife Desdemona. A story of a jealous husband.

## Writing

**1** Write a short text (two to three sentences) about your family. Use the useful phrases to help you.

### Useful phrases

- My family is from ...
- My mother's / father's name is ...
- My parents are from ...
- I have ... brothers / sisters / children.

**2** Work in pairs. Exchange texts and write one question about your partner's family.

*What are your children's names?*

*Where are your grandparents from?*

**3** Give your paper back to your partner. Rewrite your text including the answer to the question.





# Unit 3 Family & Friends

## Part 2

### Vocabulary

#### Colours

#### Reading & Listening

#### Clans

#### Grammar

#### Questions with do / does

#### Pronunciation

#### Intonation in questions

#### Speaking

#### Find someone who ...

## Vocabulary

**1** **1.59** Write the missing vowels to complete the colours. Listen and check your answers. Then repeat the colours.

r _ d	bl _ _	y _ ll _ w

gr _ _ n	bl _ ck	wh _ t _

gr _ y	br _ wn	_ r _ ng _

**2** **1.60** Look at the pictures of tartans and listen to the descriptions of their colours. Number the pictures in the order you hear them.



## Reading and Listening

**1** **1.61** Read and listen to *Clans* on page 33 and tick (✓) the correct sentences.

- A clan is a type of family group.
- All Scottish people are part of a clan.
- Tartan is a special material for kilts.
- Scottish people wear kilts on special occasions.

**2** **1.62–1.63** Listen to two Scottish people talk about clans. Circle the correct answers in the table.

Name	Hilary Thomson	Gordon Liddle
From?	Edinburgh Glasgow Dundee	Edinburgh Glasgow Dundee
Lives in?	Edinburgh Madrid London	Edinburgh Glasgow Dundee
Has a family clan?	Yes No	Yes No
Wears a kilt?	Yes No	Yes No
Thinks clans are important?	Yes No	Yes No

**3** Do you know any Scottish people? Tell a partner.



## Grammar

Do you **live** in Scotland?

Yes, I **do**. No, I **don't**.

Does he **have** a family clan?

Yes, he **does**. No, he **doesn't**.

- use **do** with **I, you, we** and **they**
- use **does** with **he, she** and **it**

**1** Complete the sentences with **do / don't / does / doesn't**.

A: Do you live in Edinburgh now?

B: No, I don't. I live in Madrid in Spain.

A: Do you have a family clan?

B: Yes, we do. We're part of the Campbell clan.

A: Does he live in Scotland?

B: No, he doesn't. He lives in England.

A: Does he wear a kilt?

B: Yes, he does.

A: Do they think clans are important for Scottish people?

B: No, he doesn't.

**2** **1.64** Put the words in the correct order to make questions. Then listen and check your answers.

- big / family / do / you / a / have?
- children / have / you / do?
- with your parents / you / do / live?
- in a different country / you / do / have family?
- at the weekend / do / have lunch / you / with your family?
- in your family / work / do / with someone / you?

**3** Work in pairs. Ask each other the questions in exercise 2.

**G** **Grammar focus** – explanation & more practice of questions on page 140



The Campbell crest

# Clans

Clan is a Gaelic word. It means family.

A clan is a type of historical family group.

A lot of people in Scotland are part of a clan.

Scottish clans have a material with a special pattern – tartan. Many Scottish people wear a **kilt** in their clan tartan on special occasions such as **weddings**.



## Pronunciation

**1** **1.65** Listen to the intonation in this question from Grammar exercise 2.

Do you have a big family?

**2** Listen again and repeat the questions in Grammar exercise 2.

## Speaking

Walk around the class. Ask questions to complete the task.

Find someone who ...

- has a big family.
- has children.
- lives with their parents.
- has family in a different country.
- has lunch with their family at the weekend.
- works with someone in their family.





## Part 3

## Speaking

## Talking about friends

## Reading

Meeting places  
around the world

## Vocabulary

Describing what you  
do with friends

## Grammar

## Wh- questions (2)

## Speaking

## Asking about friends

## Speaking

- 1 Write the names of three friends.
- 2 Work in pairs. Ask questions about your partner's friends. Use ideas from the box below.

Where's Sven from?

From?

Married?

Children?

Work / Study together?

## Reading

- 1 You are going to read a text about friends and meeting places. Check you understand the words in bold in the box.

at **home**    at the **mall**    at the **market**  
at the **park**    in the **square**

**Language note:** a *mall* is American English. In British English it is usually called a *shopping centre*.

- 2 Read *Meeting places around the world*. Which places in the box in exercise 1 go with each paragraph? There is one place you do not need.

**Language note:** we use the verbs *love*, *like*, *don't like* and *hate* + noun to say how much we find things enjoyable.

love                      like                      don't like                      hate

I **love** parties.

I **hate** early mornings.

# Meeting places around the world



## Abu Dhabi, United Arab Emirates

In my country, young women meet up at home. My friend Shamsa lives in a big house and we all go there and have a little party. (1) \_\_\_\_\_. We have something to eat and we talk about our friends, our parents, fashion – everything! We have a great time.

## Dallas, US

My friends and I go to the mall. Sometimes we see a film or go shopping, but normally we just walk round and talk. The guys sometimes play video games (3) \_\_\_\_\_. I prefer window shopping.



## Hanoi, Vietnam

I normally see my friends at the *Hoàn Kiếm Lake*. It's very beautiful. (2) \_\_\_\_\_. We go for a walk and talk a lot.

## Florence, Italy

All our friends live in the same part of town. We usually go to the main square – *la Piazza del Signoria* and go for a walk and talk. We meet in the early evening (4) \_\_\_\_\_.



**3** Read the text again. Complete the gaps in the text with the phrases below.

- a but I hate computers
- b because we like a walk before dinner
- c I don't like busy places – I prefer to be outdoors
- d We all love parties

**4** Where do you meet your friends? Tell a partner.

## Vocabulary

**1** Write the verb from the text that goes with each group of expressions.

- |   |             |                                                                            |
|---|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | <u>meet</u> | up<br>in the evening<br>near work                                          |
| 2 | _____       | in a big house<br>in the same part of town<br>about five minutes from here |
| 3 | _____       | about our friends / family<br>a lot                                        |
| 4 | _____       | for a walk<br>shopping<br>to a restaurant                                  |
| 5 | _____       | a film<br>my friends                                                       |
| 6 | _____       | video games<br>football                                                    |

**2** Write four sentences to describe what you do with your friends when you meet up. Use the expressions in exercise 1.

*I meet up with my friends in the evening.  
We play football.*

## Grammar

**Where do you and your friends meet?**

- use a *Wh-* question word + the auxiliary *do / does* to make questions in the present simple

**1** Put the words in the correct order to make questions.

live where you do?

*Where do you live?*

- see where you do friends your?
- you your meet when friends do?
- meet why you do there?
- do do what you?

**2** Look at the questions in exercise 1. Change the subject to *he*.

*Where do you live?*

*Where does he live?*

**3** Work in pairs. Read about another meeting place. Then answer the questions in exercise 2.

## Limerick, Ireland

I normally meet some old school friends at a local pub. We meet on a Friday evening. We go there because it's close to work. We sit and talk and we sometimes watch the football.

**G** Grammar focus – explanation & more practice of *Wh-* questions on page 140

## Speaking

Work in pairs. Ask each other the questions in Grammar exercise 1. Then work with a new partner. Tell them what you found out.

*Noriko meets her friends in the park.*





# Unit 3 Family & Friends

## Part 4

### Vocabulary

#### Adjectives to describe characteristics

### Reading & Listening

#### Man's best friend?

### Grammar

#### Object pronouns

### Pronunciation

#### Emphasising

## Vocabulary

1 Match the adjectives to their opposites. Which adjectives are positive (+) and which are negative (-)?

- |               |              |
|---------------|--------------|
| 1 intelligent | a awful      |
| 2 clean       | b ugly       |
| 3 friendly    | c stupid     |
| 4 nice        | d dirty      |
| 5 beautiful   | e unfriendly |

**Language note:** the adjective comes **before** the noun in English.  
It is an **intelligent** animal.

2 Choose three of the animals below. How would you describe these animals? Use the words in exercise 1.

*They're beautiful.*

*It's an intelligent animal.*

## Reading and Listening

1 1.66 Read and listen to *Man's best friend?* on page 37 and find three things dogs are used for.

2 1.67 Listen to six people talking about dogs. Circle the correct option.

Speaker 1 *likes / dislikes* dogs.

Speaker 2 *likes / dislikes* dogs.

Speaker 3 *likes / dislikes* dogs.

Speaker 4 *likes / dislikes* dogs.

Speaker 5 *likes / dislikes* dogs.

Speaker 6 *likes / dislikes* dogs.

3 Listen again. Answer the questions.

- 1 What does the speaker think of dogs?
- 2 How old is Jupiter?
- 3 What animals does speaker 3 **not** like?
- 4 What does the speaker say about Rufus?
- 5 What is the problem with Princess?
- 6 Speaker 6 doesn't have a dog. Why?

4 Do you agree that dogs are *man's best friend*? Why?

### Extend your vocabulary - really

*really* = very

It is very common in spoken English.

This dog is *really* intelligent. = This dog is very intelligent.

He *really* likes dogs. = He likes dogs very much.

Give examples of ...

- 1 a *really* ugly city.
- 2 a person you *really* like.
- 3 a *really* intelligent animal.
- 4 a *really* beautiful place.



dolphins

a horse

a dog

a cat

camels

a rat



## Grammar

Dogs? I really hate **them**.  
She doesn't like **me** very much.

- use *me, you, him, her* etc. after the verb in statements
- the pronouns *it* and *you* have the same form for subject and object

**1** Circle the correct option. Then check your answers in the audioscript on page 153.

- 1 I really hate they / them. They / Them are awful animals.
- 2 We have a dog, Jupiter. He / Him is 16 years old, he's intelligent, friendly and we love him / he.
- 3 I / Me like dogs.
- 4 Personally, I don't like he / him very much.
- 5 I / Me love my dog. She / Her name is Princess.
- 6 We / Us would like a dog. We / Us love they / them.

**2** Replace the underlined word with a subject or object pronoun.

**Cats** are very popular animals for the home. People like cats because cats are clean. Cats don't need to go for a walk every day. Some people hate cats. Cats have a reputation as unfriendly animals.

People say that a dog is a man's best friend and I agree. My dog Jack is definitely my best friend. My wife and I have two small children and Jack is really good with the children. My wife and the children and I all love Jack.

**G** Grammar focus – explanation & more practice of object pronouns on page 140

## Pronunciation

**1** 1.68 Listen and repeat the phrases.

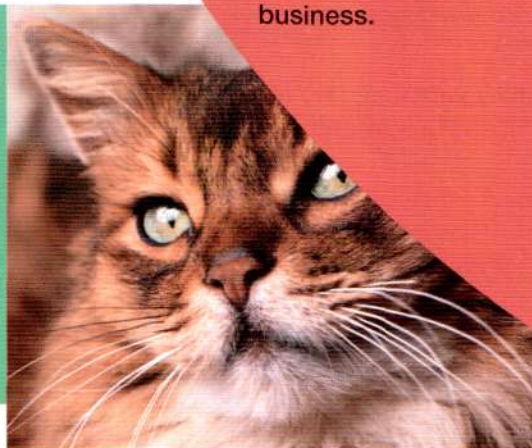
- 1 Do you like dogs? Dogs? I hate them.
- 2 Do you like cats? Cats? I love them.

# Man's best friend?

The relationship between dogs and humans is more than 12,000 years old.

People use dogs for defence, for carrying things, for transport and even for food.

In many parts of the world, people use dogs as companions and pets in the home. The care of dogs in the United States and Britain is a multi-billion dollar business.



A war dog from Ancient Rome



Sled dogs in North America



Sniffer dogs at an international airport



Guide dogs for the blind



### Famous Dog lovers

**Alexander the Great** (356–323 BC), King of Macedonia  
Dog's name: **Peritas**

**Dwight D. Eisenhower** (1890–1969), US President  
Dog's name: **Heidi**

**Pablo Picasso** (1881–1973), Spanish artist  
Dog's name: **Kasbec**

**2** Make similar exchanges. Use the verbs and nouns in the box for ideas.

hate like love  
football school shopping





a



b



c



d

## Warm up

1 Choose **one** of the topics from the box. Think of two or three things you can say about this topic.

a friend   a member of your family   you   your town

2 Work in pairs. A: tell B about your topic. Try to talk for 30 seconds. B: listen to A. Then swap roles and repeat.

## Listening

1 1.69–1.72 Listen to four conversations. Match each one to a picture.

2 Listen again. Choose the correct answer.

- 1 The man is from ...  
a Hungary.   b Romania.   c Scotland.
- 2 Michael's birthday is in ...  
a January.   b June.   c July.
- 3 Alan lives ...  
a with the woman.   b with his parents.  
c with his wife.
- 4 At 7.00am, the man ...  
a starts work.   b finishes work.   c goes to work.

## Language focus: showing interest

**Language note:** repeating words and asking questions shows interest in what the other person is saying.

Complete the responses from the listening. Repeat a word and add a question in the box.

How old is he?   What part of Romania?  
Why do you start so early?   When's his birthday?

- 1 I'm from Romania.  
Romania ? \_\_\_\_\_?
- 2 He's two years old.  
\_\_\_\_\_? \_\_\_\_\_?
- 3 Well, he still lives with his parents.  
\_\_\_\_\_? \_\_\_\_\_?
- 4 Seven o'clock in the morning.  
\_\_\_\_\_? \_\_\_\_\_?

## Speaking

Work in pairs. A: tell B about a topic from Warm up exercise 1. Try to talk for 30 seconds. B: listen to A. Use the techniques in the language focus to show interest. Then swap roles and repeat.



## Warm up

1 Complete the sentences about families with your own ideas.

- 1 A big family has \_\_\_\_\_ or more people.
- 2 A small family has \_\_\_\_\_ people.
- 3 A very small family has \_\_\_\_\_ people.
- 4 A typical family in my country has \_\_\_\_\_ people.

2 Work in pairs and compare your answers.

## Listening



1 1.73–1.78 Listen to six people talking about their families. Circle the correct option.

- 1 Nicole, Switzerland  
big family / small family / doesn't say
- 2 Carmen, Spain  
big family / small family / doesn't say
- 3 Martin, Czech Republic  
big family / small family / doesn't say
- 4 Dot, Scotland  
big family / small family / doesn't say
- 5 Bea, England  
big family / small family / doesn't say
- 6 Ena, Bosnia  
big family / small family / doesn't say

2 Listen again and complete the sentences.

- 1 Nicole has \_\_\_\_\_ brother/brothers.
- 2 There are \_\_\_\_\_ people in Carmen's family.
- 3 Martin's mother has \_\_\_\_\_ sister/sisters.
- 4 Dot has \_\_\_\_\_ brother/brothers.
- 5 Bea has \_\_\_\_\_ sister/sisters.
- 6 Ena has \_\_\_\_\_ brother/brothers.

## Language focus: a lot of, lots of

1 Read the language note. Then add *a lot of* or *lots of* in the appropriate places in the sentences below.

**Language note:** *a lot of/lots of* = a large number

Use *a lot of/lots of* with plural nouns and uncountable nouns.

*I have a lot of books.*

*There's a lot of food.*

(See unit 4 for more on uncountable nouns.)

- 1 My mother has two sisters, so I have cousins.
- 2 My parents don't have brothers and sisters. I have only one cousin.
- 3 My friends live with their parents.
- 4 Are people in your family from Russia?
- 5 I have a small family. I don't have brothers or sisters, only one brother.

## Speaking

Work in groups. Ask questions to find out if the sentences below are true. If they are false change them so they are true.

- Everybody in this group has a brother or sister.
- Everybody in this group has cousins.
- Two people in this group are parents.
- Only one person in the group has a grandson or granddaughter.
- Everybody in this group has a family member in a different country.

## Useful phrases

- Do you have ...  
any brothers or sisters?  
a brother in a different country?  
any children?



## UNIT 3 Writing a personal description

### Reading

1 Read Patricia's letter to her teacher. Does she have a big family?



Dear Oliver

My name Patricia. Im from Madrid in Spain. I work for a bank. I speak Spanish and a little English. I like travelling and shopping.

My husband name is Carlos. He an engineer. He likes sports and films. We have a daughter called Claudia. She ten years old and she studies English at the English Institute too. She likes skiing and playing tennis. I think she speaks English very well.

My parents are retired. I have two brothers. My first brother called Felipe. He a lawyer and he married to Alejandra. They have two daughters called Isabel and Maria Eugenia. My second brother name is Fernando. He a doctor, and he works in a hospital. He isnt married.

Thank you for your teaching. I'm very happy to be in your class.

Best wishes

Patricia

2 Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)?

- 1 Patricia is married.
- 2 Claudia likes sports.
- 3 Alejandra is Felipe's mother.
- 4 Patricia likes her English class.

### Language focus: names

1 Complete the sentences about Patricia.

- 1 My name's \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 My husband's name is \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 My husband's called \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 We have a daughter called \_\_\_\_\_.

2 Write sentences including the words below.

- 1 My / son / called Antonio. \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 My / sister / name / Rosa. \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 I / have / son / called / Xavier. \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 My / name / Maria. \_\_\_\_\_.

### Writing skills: apostrophes

Patricia wrote *My name Patricia* ✗

The correct sentence is *My name's Patricia* ✓

1 Read the rules about apostrophes in English.

Use apostrophes ...

- a with singular nouns to show possession.  
*my husband's name, Felipe's daughters*
- b with plural nouns to show possession.  
*my brothers' daughters, my parents' names*
- c with verb contractions.  
*I'm, you're, she's, it's, Patricia's*
- d with contractions of *not*.  
*we aren't, he isn't, they don't, he doesn't*

2 Find ten more places in Patricia's letter where she does not use apostrophes.

3 Which of the examples are ...

- 1 possessives?
- 2 contractions of *is* or *am*?

4 Add ten apostrophes to the text about Maria Jose.

My names Maria Jose and Im from Almeria. My husbands name is Marco. He isnt Spanish. Hes from Italy. My fathers an engineer and my mother doesnt work. My sisters names are Emilia and Raul. Theyre married and their husbands names are Jose and Rafael.

### Preparing to write

Work in pairs. Draw your family tree and tell your partner about your family. Use the useful phrases to help you.

#### Describing your family

- I have one brother and two sisters.
- His name is ... / He's called ...
- I have a son called ...
- He's retired / married / single / divorced.
- She's ten (years old).

### Writing

1 Write a letter to your teacher. Write about yourself and your family.

2 Work in pairs. Exchange letters with your partner. Correct any mistakes.



## Grammar

## 1 Correct one word in each sentence.

- 1 My sister name is Dominica.
- 2 We like our cat but she doesn't like we.
- 3 My grandparent's names are Lucy and Frederick.
- 4 I hate parties but my friends love they.
- 5 I love my brother but I don't see her very often.

## 2 Complete the questions.

- 1 Do \_\_\_\_\_?  
Yes, I really like video games.
- 2 Where \_\_\_\_\_?  
I live near the park.
- 3 Where \_\_\_\_\_?  
Sven works in New York.
- 4 When \_\_\_\_\_?  
Mario meets his friends in the evening.
- 5 What \_\_\_\_\_?  
Anna and Magda go shopping at the weekend.

## Vocabulary

Complete the sentences.

- 1 Your uncle's son is your \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 The opposite of *beautiful* is \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 Your father's father is your \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 Yellow and red make \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 Black and white make \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 Your daughter's children are your \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7 The opposite of *nice* is \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8 The opposite of *clean* is \_\_\_\_\_.
- 9 Your mother's sister is your \_\_\_\_\_.
- 10 Blue and yellow make \_\_\_\_\_.

## Speaking

1 Work in pairs. Ask ten questions about your partner's family. Then tell the class about it.

2 Write five true sentences about your evenings using the words in the box.

go meet play see talk about

*I talk about music with my friends. I don't play football.*

3 Work in pairs. Read your sentences to your partner. Are any of their sentences the same as yours?

## Dictionary skills 1: using a learner's dictionary

1 Work in pairs. Answer the questions about using a dictionary. Then compare your answers.

- 1 What kind of dictionary do you have?
  - a a bilingual dictionary
  - b a monolingual learner's dictionary
  - c an electronic / online dictionary
- 2 When do you use your dictionary?
  - a at home
  - b in class
  - c at home and in class
- 3 Why do you use a dictionary?
  - a to look up the meaning of English words
  - b to translate words into English
  - c to check the spelling of words
  - d to check the pronunciation of words
  - e to check how to use words

2 Look at the entry for *intelligent* from the *Macmillan Essential Dictionary* and answer the questions.

*intelligent* /ɪntelɪdʒ(ə)nt (adjective)

good at thinking, understanding and learning = CLEVER  
≠ UNINTELLIGENT: *He was highly intelligent, but disliked studying.*

- 1 What is the meaning of *intelligent*?
- 2 What kind of word is it? (noun, adjective, verb etc)
- 3 How do you pronounce *intelligent*?
- 4 What is the opposite of *intelligent*?
- 5 Which word means the same as *intelligent*?
- 6 What is the example sentence for *intelligent*?

3 Read the sentences and look up the highlighted words in your dictionary. Which questions in exercise 2 can you answer for each word?

- 1 I'm always **busy** on Saturdays.
- 2 My **neighbour's** name is Katya.
- 3 Mr Moss is very **rude**.
- 4 In the evening I **chat** with friends.



# UNIT 4 Bed & Breakfast

## Part 1

Vocabulary

Hotel facilities

Reading

Unusual hotels

Grammar

There is / There are

Speaking

Inventing a hotel

## Vocabulary

1 Match the phrases in the box to the pictures. Say the words.

airport transfer bar cable television  
car park guided tours gym  
internet access meeting room  
restaurant swimming pool

2 Work in pairs. Choose one of the situations below. What are the two most important facilities for you?

- You are on holiday with two small children. You are at the hotel for three days and three nights.
- You are on a business trip. You are at the hotel for one night and you have an important meeting. You have a flight early the next morning.
- You are with your wife / husband. You are in the hotel for one night and then you are driving to a different city.

## Reading

1 Look at the pictures and quickly read the texts on page 43. What is the best title?

- Unusual places to spend the night
- Expensive places to spend the night
- Romantic places to spend the night

2 Choose the correct answer. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

- Where can you sleep for \$120?  
a train b jail c tepee
- Which hotel has a restaurant?  
a tepee b train c jail
- Where can you go with a group?  
a jail b tepee c train
- Where do you sleep in a building?  
a jail b tepee c train
- Where can you sleep and study?  
a train b tepee c jail

3 2.01 Read and listen to the texts again and complete the sentences with one or more words.

- Trains or buses stop at a \_\_\_\_\_. (text 1)
- The \_\_\_\_\_ is the part of the train where people eat. (text 1)
- The American word for the shopping or business centre of a city is \_\_\_\_\_. (text 2)
- If you want to know the \_\_\_\_\_ of something, you can ask 'How much is it?' (text 3)
- A holiday that includes hotel, transport and food and extras is a \_\_\_\_\_ holiday. (text 3)

4 Complete the sentences with your own ideas. Then compare with a partner.

I think the most interesting place is ...  
I wouldn't like to stay at ...





## Grammar

*There is a restaurant.*

*There are seven old train cars.*

*There aren't any criminals at the jail.*

*Is there a dining car?*

- use *there is / there are* to say something exists
- form the affirmative with *there is + singular noun* and *there are + plural noun*
- form the negative with *there isn't a ...* or *there aren't any ...*

**1** Complete the sentences with the correct form of *there is* and *there are*.

- 1 There \_\_\_\_\_ (+) one hotel in town.
- 2 There \_\_\_\_\_ (-) internet access in the rooms.
- 3 There \_\_\_\_\_ (-) any meeting rooms.
- 4 There \_\_\_\_\_ (+) guided tours.
- 5 There \_\_\_\_\_ (-) a restaurant.

**2** Make questions with the words.

private rooms? *Are there any private rooms?*

internet in the rooms? *Is there internet in the rooms?*

- |                            |                              |
|----------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1 good views?              | 4 TV?                        |
| 2 telephones in the rooms? | 5 a guided tour of the area? |
| 3 a restaurant?            | 6 transfers to the hotel?    |

**3** Work in pairs. Read the text. Then ask each other the questions in exercise 2.

**Sleep in a lighthouse** at the Quirpon Lighthouse Inn. This hotel is on Newfoundland's Quirpon Island. There are great views of the ocean from the windows. There are 11 private rooms in total. Prices are from \$225 for a single to \$350 for a suite. Meals are included in our restaurant. The hotel has the traditional look and feel of the lighthouse, so no internet, TV or telephones in the rooms. There are tours available, and boat transfers to the island are included.

**G Grammar focus** – explanation & more practice of *there is / are* on page 140

## Speaking

Work in small groups. You are going to invent an unusual hotel. A: turn to page 126. B: turn to page 128.

These **hotels** don't have all the **typical facilities**, but each of them offers something **special and unique**.

**Sleep on a train** at the

Train Station Inn. This hotel is in an old train station in Nova Scotia. The owners, James and Shelley Le Fresne, use the station and the train as rooms. There are seven old train cars (from 1911 to 1978). There is a restaurant in the dining car. Prices are from \$89 to \$169 per room or train car.



**Sleep in a jail** in the Canadian

capital, Ottawa. Here, you can sleep in the old downtown Ottawa Jail. There are group or private bedrooms. There are still bars on the doors! Prices are from \$25 to \$65. Don't worry, there aren't any criminals there!



**Sleep in a tepee** at a UNESCO World

Heritage site in Alberta. At this hotel, there are guided tours and lessons in local culture. The best part: sleep in a real tepee outside. The price is around \$300, or \$620 for a full package.





# Unit 4 Bed & Breakfast

## Part 2

Vocabulary

Furniture

Pronunciation

Consonant clusters

Reading

The CouchSurfing project

Listening

Describing a home

Speaking

Talking about your house

## Vocabulary

1 Match the words in the box to the pictures.

bath cooker couch / sofa  
cupboard fridge lamp armchair  
shelf shower toilet wardrobe

2 2.02 Listen and check your answers. Say the words.

3 Which things do you have in your ...

- kitchen?
- living room?
- bathroom?
- bedroom?

## Pronunciation

1 2.03 Listen and repeat these words. Notice the underlined group of consonants.

shelf lamp fridge bathroom  
armchair

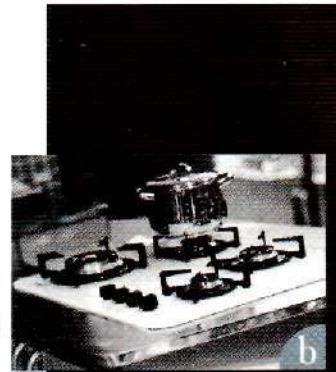
2 2.04 Work in pairs and say these words. Then listen and check your answers.

grandfather black square outdoors  
friendly stupid

3 Say these sentences. Then compare with your partner.

- There's a lamp on the shelf near the armchair.
- I meet my grandfather outdoors at the square.
- The black dog is friendly but it's a bit stupid.

4 2.05 Listen and check.





## Reading


1 Look at the logo and then read the definition.




**CouchSurfing**  
is a new way to  
travel. To 'CouchSurf'  
is to stay at another  
person's home for  
free for the night.

2 Work in pairs and discuss these questions.  
**Don't** read the text, guess the answers.

- 1 How do CouchSurfers contact each other?
- 2 Who goes CouchSurfing and where?
- 3 How many CouchSurfers are there?
- 4 How old are CouchSurfers?

3  2.06 Read and listen to *The CouchSurfing project* and check your predictions.

## Listening

1  2.07 Listen to a conversation between a travelling CouchSurfer and a local person. Who is the CouchSurfer – Beth or Clare?

2 Listen again. Write the vocabulary of rooms and furniture you hear in the conversation.

## Speaking

1 Draw a plan of your flat / house. Write the names of the rooms.

2 Work in pairs. A: show B round your flat / house. B: ask A questions. Then swap roles and repeat.

### Useful phrases

- I live in a flat.
- This is the kitchen.
- There are ... bedrooms.
- The bathroom is in here.
- In the living room, we have a ... and a ...
- What's this?
- That's nice.
- Where's the ...?

# The CouchSurfing project

### What is the CouchSurfing Project?

The CouchSurfing Project connects travellers with local people in different countries. CouchSurfers go to the website and email people with an available couch. There are more than 700,000 CouchSurfers.

### Who are the CouchSurfers?

There are CouchSurfers from around the world, but the top nationalities are the Americans, the Germans, the French, the Canadians, the British and the Italians.

### Where do the CouchSurfers stay?

The most popular cities to CouchSurf are: Paris, France; London, UK; Montreal, Canada; Berlin, Germany; Vienna, Austria and Istanbul, Turkey.

### Is CouchSurfing only for young students?

No. CouchSurfers are any age from 18 to 78. The average CouchSurfer is 27 years old.



## Part 3

## Vocabulary

## Food and drink

## Listening

## A full English breakfast

## Pronunciation

## Linking words

## Grammar

## Countable and uncountable nouns

## Speaking

## Describing a picture of a breakfast

## Vocabulary

1 2.08 Look at the pictures of food and drink below and complete the words. Then listen and repeat the words.

2 Work in pairs and cover the pictures. Can you remember ...

- two types of fruit? • two dairy products?
- four drinks? • three other things?

3 What things from exercise 1 do you have for breakfast in your country? Tell your partner.

## Listening

1 2.09 Read the introduction to *A full English breakfast* and look at the pictures of different breakfasts on page 47. Then listen to the descriptions and number the dishes in the order you hear them.

2 Listen again and match the dishes 1–4 with the correct food and drink a–d.

- a maple syrup, pancakes
- b biscuit, tea, milk
- c rice, fish, eggs
- d fruit, fish

3 Work in pairs. Ask each other the questions. Which dishes ...

- do you know?
- sound good to you?
- don't sound good to you?

### Extend your vocabulary

– a type of, a kind of, a sort of

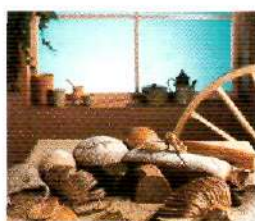
Use a *type of*, a *kind of* and a *sort of* to describe things.

*Maple syrup is a type of liquid.*

Look at the words and write a sentence with a *type of*, a *kind of* or a *sort of* and a word from the box.

- 1 juice
- 2 banana
- 3 bus
- 4 dictionary

book   drink   fruit   transport



1 \_ \_ e a \_



2 j \_ m



3 \_ g g s



4 m \_ l k



5 \_ u i \_ \_



6 c \_ k \_ s



7 o \_ a \_ e



8 r \_ c



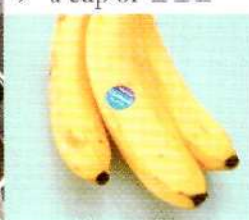
9 a cup of \_ \_ \_



10 c h \_ \_ s \_



11 \_ o \_ \_ e e



12 b \_ n \_ n \_ s



13 f \_ s \_

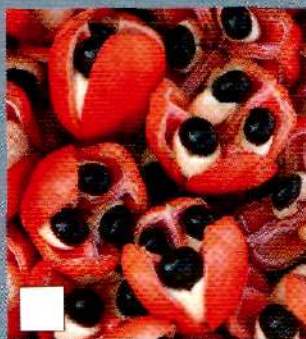


14 \_ u t \_ e r

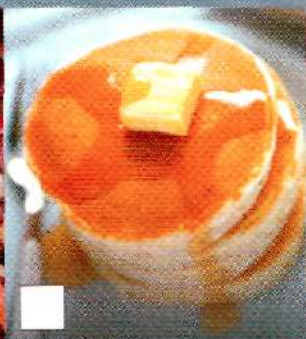


# A full English breakfast

The famous *full English breakfast* is traditional in England, but other English-speaking countries have their own breakfast favourites. Here are some of them.



Ackee (Jamaica)



Maple syrup and pancakes (Canada and the US)



Beskuit (South Africa)



Kedgeree (India)

## Pronunciation

1 2.10 Listen to the linking between these words.

It's a type of music.

2 2.11 Listen and mark the linked words. Then listen again and repeat.

- 1 It's a kind of apple.
- 2 a cup of tea
- 3 a glass of milk
- 4 It's a type of fruit.

## Grammar

*A beskuit is a biscuit.  
It's made of rice.*

- in English there are two types of nouns: countable and uncountable
- use *a / an* or *some* before countable nouns
- uncountable nouns do not have a plural form
- use *some* or no article before uncountable nouns
- some nouns can be countable and uncountable

1 Read about another traditional breakfast food and decide if the **highlighted** words are countable or uncountable.

Marmalade is a kind of jam. It is made from oranges from Spain. Many British people eat it with toast and coffee.

2 2.12 Read the conversation and circle the correct option. Listen and check your answers.

A: Good morning, would you like to order your breakfast?

B: Yes, please. I'd like two egg / eggs.  
Scrambled please.

A: OK – and to drink?

B: Do you have fruit juice / an fruit juice?

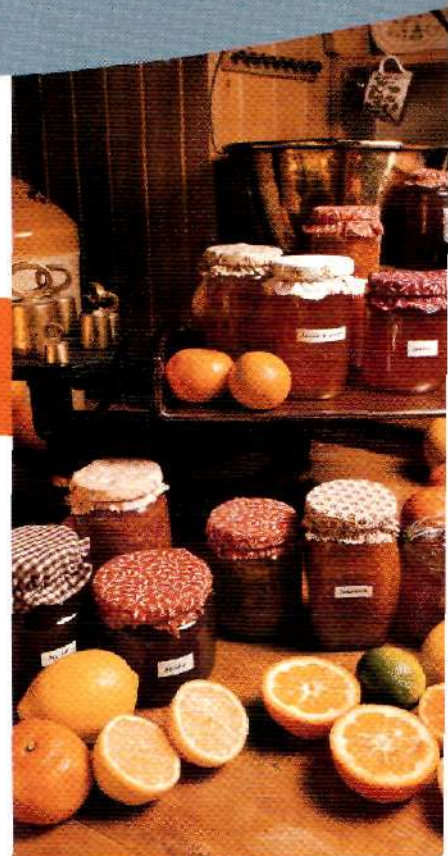
A: Yes, we have orange juice and apple juice.

B: OK, an orange juice / orange juices please.

A: Would you like tea or coffee?

B: Some cup of tea / A cup of tea, please.

**Grammar focus** – explanation & more practice of countable and uncountable nouns on page 140



Marmalade (Britain)

## Speaking

Work in pairs. A: turn to page 127.  
B: turn to page 129. Describe the breakfast tables.



# Unit 4 Bed & Breakfast

## Part 4

### Reading

#### *Hungry Planet* interview

### Vocabulary

#### Fresh food & processed food

### Grammar

#### Quantifiers (a lot of, much, many, some)

### Writing

#### Writing about what you eat or what you would like to eat

## Reading

**1** The two pictures at the bottom of page 49 come from a book called *Hungry Planet*. Work in pairs. What do you think the book is about? Tell your partner. Turn to page 134 for larger versions of these pictures.

**2** Read the interview below with the author of *Hungry Planet* and check your ideas.

**3** Work in pairs. Cover the text. Try to tell your partner as much as you can about *Hungry Planet*.

**4** Is there anything that surprises you about the photos? Tell a partner.

*I think ... is surprising.*

*I think ... is interesting.*

## Vocabulary

**1** Look at the pictures again. Find examples of the foods in the box.

beans   carrots   crisps  
French fries / chips   meat   pizza  
potatoes   rice   tomatoes

**2** Put the words from exercise 1 into the table. Can you add more words?

fresh food	processed food
carrots	

**3** Which of the items in exercise 1 do you eat every week?

## Hungry Planet

### Interview with the photojournalist, Peter Menzel



Peter Menzel is a photojournalist of stories on science and the environment. He lives with the editor and writer Faith D'Aluisio in California, US. They are the authors of *Hungry Planet*.

#### What is *Hungry Planet*?

*Hungry Planet* is a book. It shows people what typical families eat and how they live.

#### What is in the photographs?

Each photograph is of a family in their home and a week's food. We include the weight and cost of each item of food. There is also a short history of each family.

#### How many families are there in the book? Where are they from?

There are 30 families from 24 countries.

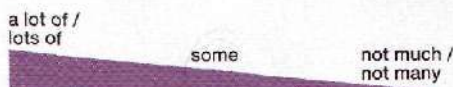
#### Why food?

For the first time in the history of our planet, the number of overfed and underfed people is the same. Many people don't eat enough, but there are now many people who eat too much. We want to record this time in history, and show as many people as possible.



## Grammar

The Guatamalan family eats **a lot of** fruit.  
 They don't eat **much** processed food.  
 The American family don't eat **many** vegetables.  
 They eat **some** fruit.



- use *a lot of / lots of* and *some* with countable and uncountable nouns
- use *not much* with uncountable nouns
- use *not many* with countable nouns

**1** Read the sentences and correct the mistakes.

- 1 The Guatamalan family eat lot of tomatoes.
- 2 The American family eat some of pizzas.
- 3 The American family don't eat much tomatoes.
- 4 The Guatamalan family eat some fruits.
- 5 The American family don't eat many of healthy food.

**2** Complete the sentences so they are true for you.

- I don't eat much ...
- I eat lots of ...
- I drink some ...
- I don't eat many ...
- I drink lots of ...

**G** Grammar focus – explanation & more practice of quantifiers on page 140

## Writing

**1** Choose **one** of the tasks below.

**A** Peter Menzel takes a photograph of your family and a week's food. What is in the photo? Write your answer.

In my photo, there is / are ...

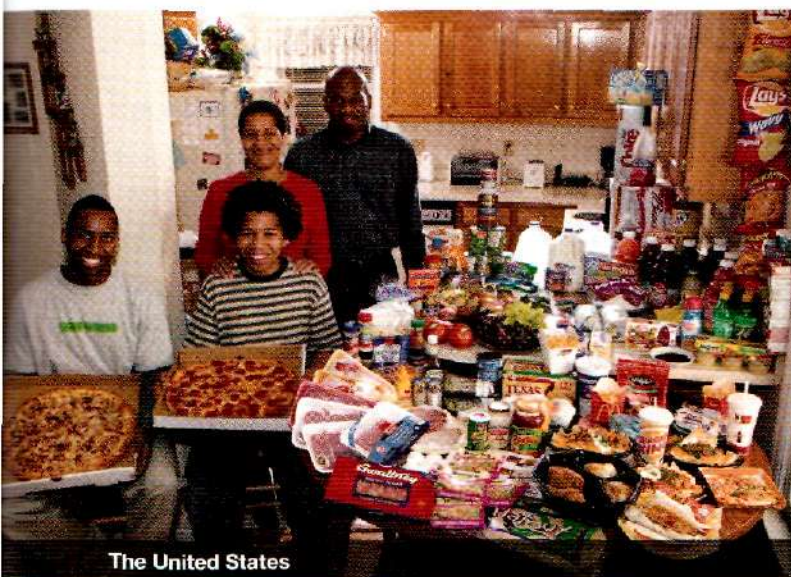
There is / are lots of ...

There is / are some ...

**B** You visit one of the families in the photos and they ask you what you would like for dinner. Plan a menu, based on what you see in the photos.

I would like ... and ... and some ...

**2** Work in pairs and swap texts. What do you have in common?



The United States



Guatamala



# UNIT 4 Function globally making and responding to offers



## Warm up

Work in pairs. A: you are invited to B's house for dinner. You arrive. B: you open the door. A is there. Read and continue the conversation.

- A: Hello.  
B: Hi. You're here. Come in.  
A: Thanks. How are you?  
B: I'm fine thanks. And you?

## Listening

1 2.13–2.15 Listen to three conversations. Match each one to a situation.

- at a person's house
- in a company
- at a hotel

2 Listen again. Answer the questions.

Conversation 1: Does the woman smoke?

Conversation 2: Does the man have a coffee?

Conversation 3: What does the woman give?

## Language focus: making and responding to offers

Making offers	<i>Would you like + a / an + noun?</i> <i>Would you like a drink?</i>
	<i>Would you like + to + verb?</i> <i>Would you like to meet your colleagues?</i>
Responding to offers	Yes, please. That would be great. No, thank you. Thank you very much, but I'm fine.

1 2.16 Read the information in the table. Then listen and write an offer with the word or phrase you hear.

A coffee

*Would you like a coffee?*

2 Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions in exercise 1. Give different responses.

## Speaking

Work in pairs. Choose **one** of the tasks below.

**A** Look at the audioscript on page 154 and choose one of the conversations. Change some of the information and then practise the conversation.

**B** Choose one of the situations from Listening exercise 1. Practise the conversation with the new expressions of making and responding to offers.



# Global English **Delicious English**

by David Crystal



The history of food words in English tells us a lot about the history of Britain and its contact with the rest of the world.

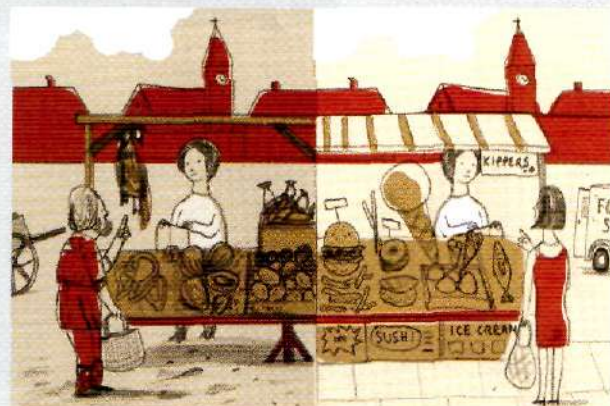
The oldest words, in Anglo-Saxon times, from the fifth century, were *bread*, *butter*, and *fish*, with *water*, *wine*, and *beer* to wash them down. *Meat* described any food in those days.

In the 11<sup>th</sup> century, the French arrived in Britain, and there were interesting new dishes, such as *pheasant*, *oyster*, *biscuit*, and *pastry*. *Pork* and *veal* arrived for the upper-class table. *Breakfast* is Anglo-Saxon, but *dinner* and *supper* are French.

By Shakespeare's time, in the 16<sup>th</sup> century, voyages around the world added more dishes to the menu. People started to eat *potatoes*, *anchovies*, *macaroni*, *curry* and *yoghurt* and drink *coffee*, *tea* and *sherry*. And so, with *kippers* and *ice cream* in the 18<sup>th</sup> century, and *hamburgers* and *chips* in the 19<sup>th</sup>, we eventually arrive at where we are today, with *tacos* and *salsa*, *goulash* and *sushi*, *Coca-Cola*® and *Chardonnay*.

## Glossary

- Chardonnay** (noun) – a type of white wine  
**eventually** (adverb) – after some time  
**dishes** (noun) – different kinds of food  
**kipper** (noun) – smoked fish  
**pork** (noun) – meat from a pig  
**sherry** (noun) – a strong wine from Spain  
**such as** – for example  
**veal** (noun) – meat from a calf (a young cow)  
**voyage** (noun) – a long journey  
**wash them down** (verb) – drink something with food



## Warm up

Where is it from? Match the food or drink to a country. Use your dictionary to help.

- |              |           |
|--------------|-----------|
| 1 curry      | a Hungary |
| 2 Coca-Cola® | b India   |
| 3 goulash    | c Italy   |
| 4 pizza      | d Japan   |
| 5 paella     | e Mexico  |
| 6 sushi      | f Spain   |
| 7 tacos      | g the US  |

## Reading

1 Read the text about food. When did people start to use these words in English?

biscuit   breakfast   chips   Coca-Cola®   coffee  
 curry   dinner   fish   hamburgers   ice cream  
 potatoes   supper   sushi   tacos   water

from the fifth century	
from the 11 <sup>th</sup> century	
from the 16 <sup>th</sup> century	
in the 18 <sup>th</sup> & 19 <sup>th</sup> centuries	
in the 21 <sup>st</sup> century	

2 Choose the correct sentence, a or b, from each pair.

- a All food words in English are from England.  
 b English food words are from different countries at different times.
- a Some names for meals are from French.  
 b All the names for meals are from French.
- a In Shakespeare's time new food and drink arrived.  
 b In Shakespeare's time new food arrived.
- a There are new words from recent times.  
 b New words stopped in the 19<sup>th</sup> century.

## Language focus

Look at the example: *Wine is a kind of drink.*

Write similar sentences to describe the words below, using the expressions in the box.

drink   vegetable   dairy product   pasta

- |                |                  |
|----------------|------------------|
| 1 tea ...      | 4 butter ...     |
| 2 macaroni ... | 5 Coca-Cola® ... |
| 3 potato ...   | 6 yoghurt ...    |

## Speaking

Think of 3 foreign words for food or drink in your language and tell your partner.



# Writing an email to a hotel

## Reading

1 Read Shih-Chieh's email to a hotel and answer the questions.

- 1 What questions does he ask about the hotel?
- 2 What does he want the hotel to send?



Dear Sir / Madam,

I want to book a room at your hotel from April 7<sup>th</sup> to April 11<sup>th</sup> (four nights). I want a single room. I want a non-smoking room with a bath and shower. If possible, I want a balcony. I also want to have breakfast. Do you have a room available? What is the price?

I have some other questions. Does the hotel have internet access? Is there a car park? What time do you serve breakfast?

Please send me information about transport to the hotel from the airport.

Yours faithfully,

Shih-Chieh Liao

## Language focus: making requests

1 Read about making requests in a formal letter or email. When you say what you want, write *I would like ...*, not *I want*.

*I would like to book a room*

*I would like a sea view*

To make a request, write *Could you please ...?*

*Could you please send me a map?*

2 Complete these sentences with *I would like* or *Could you please*.

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ to have dinner on the first night.
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ send me information about the town?
- 3 If possible, \_\_\_\_\_ a quiet room.
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ book me a taxi from the airport?

3 Make six changes to Shih-Chieh's email using *I would like* and *Could you please*.

## Writing skills: starting and ending letters and emails

1 Look at the ways of starting and ending a letter or email.

- a Dear Sir / Madam, ... Yours faithfully,
- b Hi Angela, ... Love,
- c Dear Ms Benko, ... Yours sincerely,
- d Dear Peter, ... Best wishes,

2 Which of the expressions in exercise 1 do you use ...

- 1 in a formal letter when you know the person's name?
- 2 in a formal letter when you don't know the person's name?
- 3 in an informal letter to a close friend?
- 4 in an informal letter, but not to a close friend?

## Preparing to write

1 Complete the table about a hotel you would like to book.

Number of nights	
Arrival date	
Departure date	
Type of room	
Meals	
Special requests	
Questions	

2 Work in pairs. A: imagine you work in a hotel. B: phone the hotel to book a room. Use the useful phrases to help you. Then swap roles and repeat.

## Booking a hotel

- I would like a single / double / twin room with a balcony / internet access / en suite facilities / a shower / a bath.
- If possible, I would like a smoking room / a quiet room / a sea view.
- Could you please send me information about transport / local restaurants / local entertainment / taxis from the airport?

## Writing

Write an email to the hotel to book the room. Use your notes to help you.



## Grammar

Circle the correct option.

- 1 There is *a / some / any* bar in the hotel.
- 2 There *is / are / aren't* any biscuits in the cupboard.
- 3 There is *any / a lot of / a* milk in the fridge.
- 4 We don't have *much / many / some* coffee.
- 5 Are there any *cheese / bananas / pizza* in the fridge?
- 6 I eat lots of *bread / biscuit / apple*.
- 7 There aren't *some / many / much* restaurants near here.
- 8 There *is / are / isn't* much milk in this coffee.
- 9 Is there *much / a / many* lamp in the room?
- 10 I don't eat *much / many / a* French fries.

## Vocabulary

1 Put the words in the box into the table.

armchair bed cooker fridge gym shower  
sofa swimming pool toilet wardrobe

bathroom	
bedroom	
kitchen	
hotel facilities	

2 Decide which word in each group is different. Why is it different?

milk butter cheese meat

*Meat is different because it isn't a kind of dairy product.*

- 1 coffee orange juice jam tea
- 2 orange biscuit banana apple
- 3 carrot bean potato rice
- 4 apple juice egg bread marmalade

## Speaking

1 Work in pairs. A: you are a tourist. Ask your partner about places and facilities near the school. Then swap roles and repeat.

A: *Is there a restaurant near here?*

B: *Yes, there is. There's a Chinese restaurant. It's five minutes from here.*

2 Work in small groups. Tell your group about eating and drinking habits in your country, or a different country.

*In China we eat a lot of rice. We don't eat much cheese ...*

## Learning new words

1 Tick (✓) the sentences that are true for you. Then compare with a partner.

How do you learn new words in English?

- \* I look them up in a dictionary and copy the entry.
- \* I write new words in a vocabulary book.
- \* I learn groups of words.
- \* I write new words in a sentence.
- \* I learn a number of new words every day.
- \* other

2 Read about how one student uses vocabulary cards to learn new words.

*I make cards and on one side I write a word and on the other side I draw a picture of the word, or write a sentence with a gap. I look at the pictures or sentences and try to remember the words. Then I turn over to check. It's a good way to learn new words.*

there

\_\_\_\_\_ are three  
rooms in my house.

3 Make two vocabulary cards for words from this unit. Then work in small groups and show your pictures or sentences to people in your group. Can they guess the words on the other side?

4 Read about how a different student uses vocabulary cards.

*I write the names of objects or sentences on cards. Then I put the cards on the objects in my house. Every time I see the cards, it helps me learn the words.*

5 Work in pairs and decide what cards you can make for these rooms.

bedroom kitchen living room

6 Work in pairs and say where you can put these cards in your home.

There's a  
lamp

It's a type of  
music

A cup of tea  
please

I eat lots of  
biscuits



## Part 1

Reading & Listening  
World cinema

Grammar  
Frequency adverbs  
(every day / week / month)

Vocabulary & Speaking  
A trip to the cinema

## Reading and Listening

1 2.17 Read and listen to the information about world cinema. Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)?

- 1 Hollywood makes 4,000 new films every year.
- 2 The United States makes the most films every year.
- 3 Asia makes more films every year than North America.
- 4 South America makes more films than Africa.

2 2.18 Listen to a talk about world film production and complete the information below with the missing numbers.

3 Work in pairs. What information do you think is the most interesting?

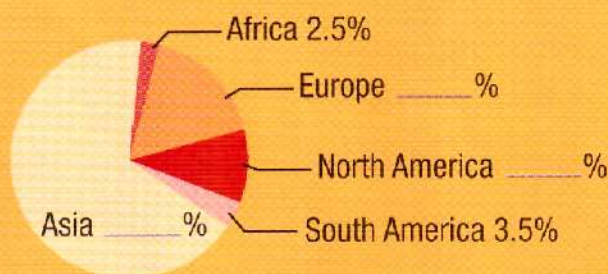
# World cinema ... not only Hollywood!

Every year, there are around 4,000 new films in the world. Many people believe that the majority of films are from Hollywood, the American film industry. This is not true.

The truth is that many other countries have very important film industries. Mexican cinema, Iranian cinema and Chinese cinema also make lots of films every year.

The biggest film industry is in India. Bollywood is its largest film producer and one of the largest in the world.

World average films per year: \_\_\_\_\_



Countries that sell the most cinema tickets every year:  
China 1,430,000,000  
US 1,400,000,000

## World Cinema:

some of the most popular non-Hollywood films

Italy *La Vita è Bella / Life is Beautiful* (1997)

Mexico *El Laberinto del Fauno / Pan's Labyrinth* (2006)

China *Ying Xiong / Hero* (2002)

India *Monsoon Wedding* (2001)

France *Amélie* (2001)

Germany *Das Boot / The Boat* (1981)

## Glossary

**film industry** (noun) – all the film businesses

**the majority** (noun) – most of the people or things in a group




## Grammar

*Every year, there are around 4,000 new films in the world.*

*How often do you go to the cinema?*

- to talk about how frequently we do things, use *every + day / week / month / year*
- use *once / twice / three times / four times + a day / week / month / year*
- to ask about frequency, use *How often ...*

**1**  **2.19** Make sentences about world film production with the words. Then listen and check your answers.

- 1 Brazil / make / seven new films / month
- 2 India / make / 2.2 new films / day
- 3 In the US 1,400 million people / buy / a cinema ticket / year
- 4 year / 1,430 million people go to the cinema / in China
- 5 The Philippines / make / around 8.7 new films / week

**2** Replace the underlined words with the frequency expressions in the box.

every month    every three months  
four times a month    once a year  
twice a week

- 1 I watch a DVD with the family on Fridays and on Sundays.
- 2 I go to the cinema in January, in February, in March, in April ...
- 3 There are lots of small film festivals in Toronto, but there is one big one every September.
- 4 I probably see a foreign film four times a year.
- 5 I read the film reviews section of the newspaper every week.

**G** **Grammar focus** – explanation & more practice of frequency adverbs on page 142



## Vocabulary and Speaking

**1** Complete the phrases with the verbs in the box. There is one that you do not need.

buy    go    read    sit    watch    see

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ the film reviews
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ a ticket
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ the film
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ to the cinema
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_ at the front / at the back / in the middle

**2** Put the phrases in order to make a trip to the cinema.

**3** Work in pairs. Choose four of the questions below. Ask and answer in pairs.

- How often do you go to the cinema?
- Who do you usually go with?
- What day do you go?
- Do you ever go to the cinema alone?
- Do you know any of the films mentioned in the text on page 54? Do you like them?
- Where do you like to sit?
- Do you read film reviews before you go to the cinema?
- Do you talk during the film?



# Unit 5 Film & Television

## Part 2

### Reading

#### Make a pitch

### Pronunciation

#### /ɪ/ & /iː/

### Vocabulary

#### Adjectives


### Writing

#### Writing a pitch

## Reading

1 Read the definition of a *pitch*. Is there a word for this in your language?


A pitch is a short description to sell an idea. Film producers look at thousands of pitches. They say you can decide if a story is good with a pitch of less than 50 words.

2  2.20 Work in small groups. Read and listen to *Make a pitch*. Check you understand the words and phrases in bold. Use a dictionary to help you.


3 Read the text again and answer the questions for each pitch.

- 1 Who are the main characters?
- 2 What is the problem?
- 4 Do you recognise any of the films?

## Pronunciation

1  2.21 Listen and circle the correct alternative in each pair.

/ɪ/	/iː/
rich	reach
live	leave
still	steal

2  2.22 Listen and put these words into two groups: /ɪ/ and /iː/. What are common spellings for /ɪ/ and /iː/?

big	it	kill	office
people	she	ship	

3 Choose one of the pitches from Reading exercise 2 and present it to a partner. Pay attention to the /ɪ/ and /iː/ sounds.

*I have a great idea for a film. Do you want to hear my idea?*

*In this film ...*

4 Which is the best idea for a film? Which is the best pitch?

## Make a pitch

A rich girl meets a poor boy. They **fall in love**. The girl decides to leave her rich boyfriend. She and the boy are happy. But wait. This story happens on the world's most famous **ship** in history – the Titanic.

A woman **steals** money from her office and **runs away**. She stops for the night at a hotel. The **hotel manager** is a strange man. The **hotel is empty**, and the woman is alone.

On the **coast** of California there is a very big **shark**. It kills people. Three men go out in a **boat** together. They want to kill the shark.

A **spaceship** answers an SOS call from another spaceship. The other spaceship is empty. They continue their journey. But now there is a new passenger on the ship. It is an alien. And it is **hungry**.







## Vocabulary

1 Look at the people in the pictures above. What types of film are they watching?

2 Complete the definitions with words in the box. There is one word you do not need.

boring exciting funny sad scary

**thriller:** a book, play or film that tells an \_\_\_\_\_ story

**science fiction film:** a film about an imaginary future that often includes space travel

**romantic drama:** a story about love. These films are sometimes \_\_\_\_\_ and make you cry.

**cartoon:** an animated film. Cartoons are often \_\_\_\_\_ and make you laugh.

**horror film:** a \_\_\_\_\_ film. It often includes the supernatural.

3 2.23 Listen and check your answers. What type of films are the films in Reading exercise 2?

4 Think of examples of ...

- a scary film.
- a funny actor.
- a sad film.
- a boring film.

5 Work in pairs. Read your examples to your partner. Can your partner guess the category?

## Writing

Work in pairs and choose **one** of the tasks below.

**A** Think of a famous film. Write a pitch in no more than 50 words but don't write the name of the film. Give your pitch to another pair. Can they identify your film?

**B** Look at the pictures. Choose one picture and think of an idea for a film. Write the pitch for your film in no more than 50 words. Present your pitch to other pairs.





## Part 3

Vocabulary

Television  
programmes

Listening

People talking about  
TV programmes

Grammar

Frequency adverbs  
(always, often,  
sometimes...)

Speaking

Television habits

## Vocabulary

1 Look at the screens a–c in the picture below. Which types of television programme in the box go with each screen?

a comedy programme    a documentary  
a film    a sports programme  
a TV series    the news

2 Look at the other types of programmes in the box. Name an example for each one. Use a dictionary to help you.

3 Work in pairs. Choose three questions and ask your partner. If they say *Yes*, ask the additional question.

Do you watch ...

- 1 the news? What time / channel?
- 2 documentaries? What kind?
- 3 sports programmes? Which sports?
- 4 comedy programmes? What's your favourite show?
- 5 films? What type?
- 6 a TV series? Which one?

A: Do you watch sports programmes?

B: Yes, I do.

A: Which sports?

B: I watch football every Saturday.

## Listening

1 2.24–2.28 Listen to five people answering questions from Vocabulary exercise 3. Complete the table.



	Question	Does he /she like this type of programme?
Speaker 1	4	-
Speaker 2		
Speaker 3		
Speaker 4		
Speaker 5		

2 Listen again and put the sentences in the correct order.

- 1 I don't often watch the news.
- 2 I sometimes watch football with people from work.
- 3 I sometimes watch documentaries about history.
- 4 I watch films in bed because they're always on late.
- 5 I never watch comedy programmes.





## Grammar

They are **always** on late.

I **don't often** watch the news.

I **never** watch comedy programmes.

- to talk about frequency in general, use *always, often, sometimes, not often, never*
- the order is usually subject + adverb + verb
- with *be* the order is subject + verb + adverb

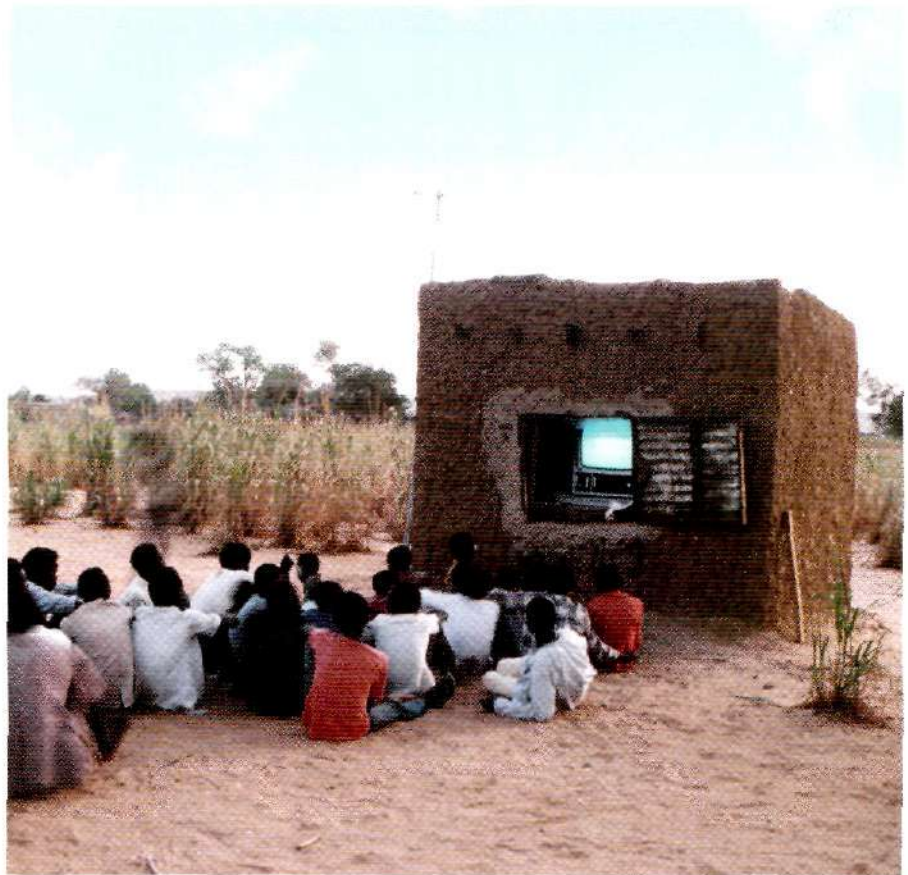
**1** Match a sentence on the left to a sentence with a similar meaning on the right.

- |                                       |                                                        |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 I always watch the news on TV.      | a I watch the news on Mondays, Wednesdays and Fridays. |
| 2 I often watch the news on TV.       | b I don't watch the news.                              |
| 3 I sometimes watch the news on TV.   | c I watch the news five days a week.                   |
| 4 I don't often watch the news on TV. | d I watch the news every day.                          |
| 5 I never watch the news on TV.       | e I watch the news once or twice a week.               |

**2** Add frequency adverbs to these sentences so they are true for you or your country. Then compare your answers with a partner.

- I watch an American series on TV.
- I watch films with my friends.
- The news is on at 8.00pm.
- I watch documentaries about animals.
- Football games are on TV on Wednesday nights.

**G Grammar focus** – explanation & more practice of frequency adverbs on page 142



## Speaking

**1** Work in pairs. Use the notes to prepare questions.

number of TVs in your house?  
number of hours you watch TV every week?  
watch the news on TV?  
watch TV at dinner?  
record programmes?

**2** Write two more questions with your partner.

**3** Work with a different student. Ask each other the questions. Remember to use frequency adverbs and try to give some extra information in your answers.

A: Do you watch TV in bed?

B: No, I don't. I never watch TV in bed because I don't have a TV in my bedroom.



## Part 4

Vocabulary & Pronunciation

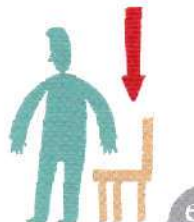
Phrasal verbs (turn down, turn off ...)

Reading

Television theories

Speaking

Talking about television



## Vocabulary and Pronunciation

1 Match the phrasal verbs in the box to the pictures.

sit down   stand up   turn down  
turn off   turn up

2 2.29 Listen and check. Notice how we stress the words in bold.

3 2.30–2.32 Read the three dialogues and circle the correct phrasal verb. Then listen and check your answers.

1  
S = Student   T = Teacher

T: Turn up / Turn off the TV, please.

S: Sorry? What?

T: It's very quiet. Can you turn up / turn off the TV?

S: Oh, OK.

2  
T = Tom   M = Mrs Humphreys

T: Hello, Mrs Humphreys.

M: Oh, hello, Tom. Are you here to see Georgina?

T: Yes.

M: She's at the shops. Sit down / Stand up and watch some TV. Would you like a drink?

T: No, thank you.

3  
M = Mother   C = Chris

M: Hello? Oh, hi. Wait, just a second ... Chris!

C: What?

M: The TV!

C: Yes?

M: Turn down / Turn up the TV! I can't hear the person on the telephone.

4 Read the dialogues from exercise 3 together. Choose one dialogue and memorise it with your partner. Then practise saying it.

## Reading

1 Check you understand the words in the box. Which words can you use to finish this sentence?

Television makes you ...

crime   effects   fat   headache   hurt  
intelligent   lazy   society   violent

2 2.33 Read and listen to *Television theories* on page 61 and check your answers to exercise 1.

3 Look at the sentences below. Match each sentence to a television theory. There is one theory you do not need.

We have a two-year-old baby. She loves these programmes, and they are so good for her!

I don't want to go to the city centre at night. The news says there are lots of problems there.

If I watch television for more than an hour, it hurts my head.

My brother watches television all day. He doesn't want to do anything else.

Turn off the TV and do some exercise! You watch too much television.

## Extend your vocabulary – see, watch

You see with your eyes.

I can see your house from here.

If you watch something, you look at it for some time because it is moving or changing.

I watch TV every night.

Work in pairs. Make a list of ...

- at least four things you can see from the classroom window.
- at least three sports people watch in your town.



# Television theories

There are many theories on the effects of television on human beings. Here are some of them:

Television is chewing gum for the eyes.  
Frank Lloyd Wright,  
American architect

## Speaking

Work in pairs. Choose **one** of the tasks below.

**A** Prepare a dialogue between two people watching television. Include one or more of the phrases in the box in your dialogue.

It's scary. Please ... It's very quiet.

Sit down. There's nothing on.

Turn down the volume. What's on tonight?

**B** Look at the television theories again and mark your opinion next to each one. 1 = strongly disagree, 5 = strongly agree. Then work in pairs and compare your answers. Try to give reasons.

## Useful phrases

- What do you think?
- I agree that ...
- For example, there are lots of ... programmes on television.
- I disagree, I think that ...

## Top TV watchers

Country	Number of hours of TV per person per week
1 US	28
2 UK	28
3 Italy	27
4 Germany	23

### The 'Television makes you stupid' theory

This theory says that there are many bad programmes on television. If you watch a lot of these programmes they make you stupid and lazy. You don't think for yourself.



### The 'Television makes you fat' theory

Some studies say that if people watch too much television they get fat. In the United Kingdom and the United States, many people think that children are fat because they watch lots of television and don't go out to play.



### The 'Television makes you intelligent' theory

Today there are special series with names like *Baby Einstein*, or *Brainy Baby*. They say that if babies sit down to watch these programmes they develop more quickly.



### The 'Television makes you frightened' theory

Every day people see crime on documentaries or the news. This theory says that this scares people. They think the world is more dangerous than it really is.



### The 'Television makes you violent' theory

This theory says that young people are violent because they see violence on television. Some people say that modern video games also make young people violent.



### The 'Television makes you ill' theory

Some people believe that if you watch television for too long, it hurts your eyes. Some people say that television gives them headaches too.





# Unit 5 Function globally shopping



## Warm up

1 Look at the items in the box. Where do you buy them? Match each item to one of the shops above. There may be more than one possible answer.

batteries CDs drinks DVD player DVDs  
flowers food fridge postcards radio  
souvenirs stereo T-shirts television

2 Use the words in exercise 1 to help you describe the pictures.

### Useful phrases

- There are lots of these stores in my country.
- This is an electronics shop. It sells ...
- Music stores are open every day. They sell ...
- Supermarkets don't open on Sundays.

## Listening

1 2.34–2.36 Listen to three conversations. Match each one to a picture. There is one picture you do not need.

2 Listen again and answer the questions.

Conversation 1: What does the man want?

How much does it cost?

Conversation 2: What kind of film does the man want?

How does he want to pay?

Conversation 3: What does the man buy?

How much does it cost?

3 2.37 Listen to the man talking to his wife at home. What is the problem?

## Language focus: shopping

1 Match the questions to the possible answers.

- Can I help you?
  - Can I pay by credit card?
  - How much does this cost?
  - Would you like a bag?
- a £4.00  
\$10.99
- b Yes. Where are the televisions?  
No, thank you. I'm only looking.
- c Yes, please.  
No, thank you.
- d Yes, of course.  
Sorry, cash only.

2 2.38 Listen and check your answers. Practise the expressions.

## Speaking

Work in pairs. Choose **one** of the tasks below.

**A** Test each other on the expressions in the Language focus. A: ask a question. B: give an answer. Close your books and continue. Add new answers.

**B** Choose one of the shops in the pictures. Prepare a conversation in that shop. Use the language from the lesson to help you.



## Warm up

Work in groups. Find out the following information quickly. Use the questions to help you.

Which person in the group ...

- goes to the cinema the most?  
(How often do you go to the cinema?)
- likes Hollywood films?  
(Do you like Hollywood films?)
- has the most DVDs at home?  
(How many DVDs do you have?)
- watches films on television the most?  
(How often do you watch films on television?)

## Listening



1 2.39–2.44 Listen to six people answering the question *How often do you go to the cinema?* Circle the correct option.

- |                       |                                                        |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 Leslie, Switzerland | <i>once a month / three times a month</i>              |
| 2 Ryusuke, Japan      | <i>once a month / twice a month</i>                    |
| 3 Berangere, France   | <i>two or three times a month / never</i>              |
| 4 Key, Hong Kong      | <i>once a week / once a month</i>                      |
| 5 Gloria, Ghana       | <i>twice a month</i><br><i>/ once every two months</i> |
| 6 Mireille, US        | <i>once a month / once a year</i>                      |

2 Listen again. Put the phrases in the order you hear them.

- I sometimes go and see action, sometimes I see comedies \_\_\_\_
- mainly we watch some western movies \_\_\_\_
- sometimes in winter there are many good films \_\_\_\_
- to improve my English I go to the cinema in Oxford \_\_\_\_

## Language focus: *it depends*

1 Read the language note. Do you have a similar phrase in your language?

**Language note:** the phrase *it depends* is very common in spoken English.

Use it when you can't give a definite answer because different things are possible in different situations.

*I go to the cinema maybe once a month. **It depends** a little on the season because sometimes in winter there are many good films.*

2 Match the questions 1–4 to the answers a–d.

- |                                             |                                                                        |
|---------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 Are there any good restaurants near here? | a It depends. The seats at the front of the cinema are more expensive. |
| 2 Do you like American films?               | b It depends on the film.                                              |
| 3 How much are the tickets?                 | c It depends. Some days I don't need to speak English.                 |
| 4 How often do you use English at work?     | d It depends. Do you like fast food?                                   |

## Speaking

1 Read the questions. Choose three and think of an answer. Begin your answer with *It depends*.

- How often do you go to the cinema?
- How often do you see your family?
- How often do you walk to school or work?
- How often do you eat in a restaurant?
- How often do you speak English?

2 Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions.



## Reading

1 Read Guncharosh's review of a film and answer the questions.

- 1 What kind of film is it?
- 2 Did she like the film?
- 3 Does it have a happy ending?



I saw a film called *Mamma Mia* recently.

It is a musical and the setting is a beautiful Greek island. The film fantastic, and the story is interesting for everyone. The actors excellent and the songs in the film really great. Some of the singing terrible but it is not a problem.

The story great fun. At the beginning of the film, a pretty young girl called Sophie plans to get married. She has got a mother called Donna but she doesn't know her father. Sophie wants to find her father. She looks in her mother's diary and invites three men (called Sam, Bill and Harry) to the wedding. Donna happy to meet the three men again but she doesn't know who is Sophie's father. At the end of the film Donna falls in love with Sam again. They get married.

It is a very good film and I really recommend it.  
I hope you enjoy it!

2 Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)?

- 1 Donna is not married at the beginning of the film.
- 2 Sophie finds her father.
- 3 Donna falls in love with Sam.
- 4 There is a wedding at the end of the film.

3 What is the film like? Write the adjectives Guncharosh uses to describe these things.

- 1 The film *fantastic*, \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 The story \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 The songs \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 The singing \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 The actors \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 The setting \_\_\_\_\_

4 Do you know this film? If so, do you agree with Guncharosh? Why / why not? If not, would you like to see the film? Why / why not?

## Writing skills: using *is* and *are*

Remember to use *is* or *are* before an adjective or noun.

The film **is** a musical. Sophie **is** a young girl.

Sophie and Donna **are** not married.

Guncharosh sometimes forgets to use *is* and *are* in her review.

She wrote: The film fantastic ✗

The correct sentence is: The film **is** fantastic ✓

Find five other places where Guncharosh forgets to use *is* and *are*.

## Language focus: *and* and *but*

1 Underline eight places in Guncharosh's review where she uses *and* or *but* to join sentences.

2 Complete the sentences with *and* or *but*.

- 1 It is a science fiction film \_\_\_\_\_ it is very interesting.
- 2 The actors are terrible \_\_\_\_\_ the music is fantastic.
- 3 Everyone says it's a great film \_\_\_\_\_ I want to see it.
- 4 At the end, they fall in love \_\_\_\_\_ get married.
- 5 The film is quite sad \_\_\_\_\_ it has a happy ending.

## Preparing to write

Work in pairs. Tell your partner about a film you saw recently. Use the useful phrases to help you. Do you recommend the film?

### Describing a film

- It's a thriller / cartoon / romantic drama.
- The setting is beautiful / an island / an imaginary future.
- The film is fantastic / good / boring / funny.
- The story is interesting / great fun / sad / scary.
- The music is really great / quite good / terrible.
- The actors are excellent / brilliant / not very good.
- At the beginning of the film, ...
- At the end of the film, ...

## Writing

Write a review of a film. Write three paragraphs.

Paragraph 1: Start with *I saw a film called ... recently*. Say what type of film it is.

Paragraph 2: Tell the story of the film

Paragraph 3: Say if you recommend the film



## Grammar

- 1** Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1 you the go often cinema to how do?  
2 bed sometimes to go I 11.00 at.  
3 news often the don't I on watch TV.  
4 films ever you do fiction watch science?

- 2** Correct the mistake in each sentence.

- 1 I go to the gym once in a week.  
2 I drink coffee two times a day.  
3 My grandparents visit me every months.  
4 I go to a restaurant four time a month.

## Vocabulary

- 1** Decide which word or phrase in each group is different. Why is it different?

- 1 violence thriller cartoon romantic drama  
2 documentary DVD sports programme TV series  
3 funny ill exciting scary  
4 review ticket the news cinema

- 2** Complete the sentences with the verbs in the box.

sit down    stand up    turn down    turn off    turn up

Can you stand up, please? I can't see you.

- 1 The music is very quiet – \_\_\_\_\_ the radio.  
2 \_\_\_\_\_ and have a cup of tea.  
3 I can't hear you – \_\_\_\_\_ the TV.  
4 This programme is boring – \_\_\_\_\_ the TV.

## Speaking and Writing

- 1** Work with a partner. Write four questions about leisure time beginning with *How often do you ...?* or *Do you ever ...?*

How often do you go to a restaurant?

Do you ever play video games?

- 2** Work with another pair. Ask them your questions and write down their answers. Tell the class their answers.

- 3** Work in small groups. Tell your group if you agree or disagree with these statements and say why.

- Romantic dramas are boring.
- TV in my country is very good.
- Going to the cinema is too expensive.
- Bollywood films are very popular in my country.

## Making notes

- 1** Answer the questions.

- 1 How often do you make notes in your English class?

- a always                      c sometimes  
b often                        d never

- 2 Where do you make notes?

- a on pieces of paper      c in an exercise book  
b in your coursebook

- 3 What do you write?

- |   |               |   |                      |
|---|---------------|---|----------------------|
| a | words         | c | answers to exercises |
| b | grammar notes | d | homework             |

- 2** Work in pairs and compare your answers.

- 3** Look at two sets of notes. How are they different?

how often? every day / week / month

twice = due volte

cartoon = cartone animato

film review

majority = la maggioranza

Philippines = Filippine

17<sup>th</sup> May

How often do you go to the cinema?

go to the cinema	once	week
watch a film on television	twice	a month
buy a DVD	three times	year

- 4** Are your notes similar to a or b? How?

- 5** Read how one student uses her notes.

I read my notes every day after class. I usually read them again at the weekend.

Sometimes I write new words in a vocabulary notebook.

- 6** Work in pairs. Tell your partner how and when you use your notes.



## Part 1

Vocabulary &amp; Reading

Jobs

Listening

Benefits at work

Grammar

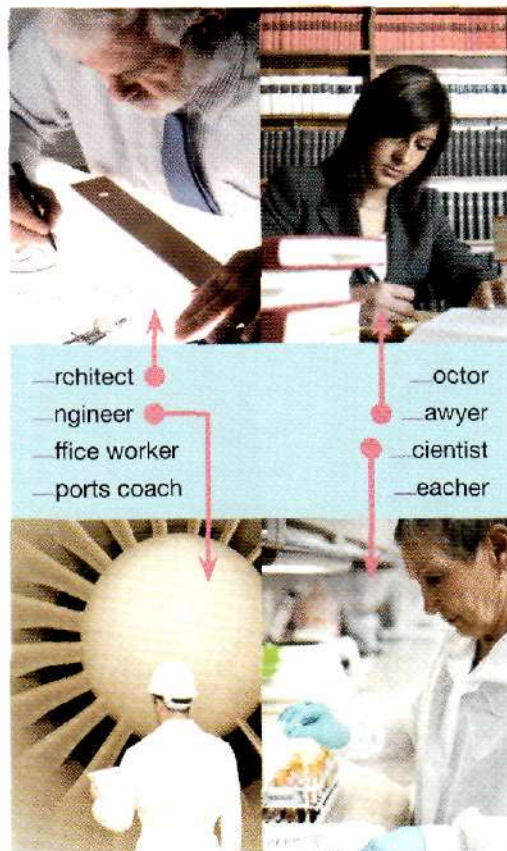
Can (possibility)

Writing

Writing about a job

## Vocabulary and Reading

1 Complete the jobs by writing the first letter of each one.



—rchitect

—ngineer

—ffice worker

—ports coach

—octor

—awyer

—cientist

—eacher

2 2.45 Work in pairs. Read and listen to *The Gallup survey* and look at the jobs in exercise 1. Which five jobs do you think are the most popular with American teenagers?

3 Look at page 130 for the results. Are you surprised by the information? Why do you think these jobs are popular?

4 Look at the expressions with the verb *work*. Add the expressions in the box to the correct group.

in an office  
in a school  
in a laboratory

WORK

for a sports club  
for a telephone company

with seven and  
eight year olds  
with people

for a bank    for a multinational  
in a hospital    in a shop  
with animals    with computers

5 Use the expressions to write two or three sentences to describe one of the jobs in exercise 1. Read your sentences to a partner. Can they guess the job?

A: *She works for a medical research company.*

*She works in a laboratory.*

B: *A scientist!*

6 Work in pairs. Choose **one** of the tasks.

A Tell your partner about where you work and the things you do at work.

B Tell your partner about a job you would like to do.

## The Gallup survey

Gallup is an organisation started by the American statistician, George Gallup. It finds out about public opinion by asking questions.

In the first Gallup Survey of Young People in 1977, the most popular boys' jobs were carpenter and electrician. For girls, the top job was secretary.

More recently, Gallup asked 1,000 teenagers in the US 'What job would you like to do?'





## Listening

### Glossary

**benefit** (noun) – something good that you get from your job

1 Look at this list of benefits workers get in some companies. Work in pairs and answer the questions.

company car      free meals  
health insurance      holidays  
pension      training

- Which benefits are usual in your country?
- Which three benefits do you think are the most important?

2 2.46–2.49 Listen to four people talking. What are their jobs? Use words from Vocabulary exercise 1 on page 66.



3 Listen again and complete the table with the best and worst things about each job.

	Best things ✓	Worst things ✗
1	✓ working with children	✗
2	✓ company car	✗
3	✓ pension	✗ long hours
4	✓ free car-parking ✓ sports facilities ✓	✗

4 Which job would you like? Why? Compare with your partner.

## Grammar

*I can use all the sports facilities.*

*We can't make personal phone calls.*

*Can you park your car easily at work?*

- use *can* + verb to talk about possibility
- we form the question by putting *can* before the subject
- *can* doesn't change in the third person

1 Read a description about the best and worst things about another job. Find and correct three mistakes with the use of *can*.

My brother's a paediatrician, a children's doctor, in a big hospital in our home town. He loves his job because he cans help children who are ill and their families. But he says sometimes it's very sad when they're very ill and he don't can do anything. And he normally works at night so he doesn't like the hours – he can't to have a normal social life.

2 Talk about your own job or a job you know. Make sentences with *can* / *can't*. Use the useful phrases to help you or other expressions you know.

*I can't write personal emails.*

### Useful phrases

- use a company car
- use the phone for personal calls
- eat for free
- get professional training
- walk to work
- start and finish later some days

**G Grammar focus** – explanation & more practice of *can* on page 142

## Writing

1 Write a paragraph about your job or a job you know well.

2 Work in small groups and swap your paragraphs. What job(s) would you like?





## Part 2

## Reading

## Ten facts about ... typing

## Grammar

## Can (ability), adverbs

## Pronunciation

## Can

## Vocabulary

## Abilities


## Reading

1 Work in pairs. Ask each other these questions.

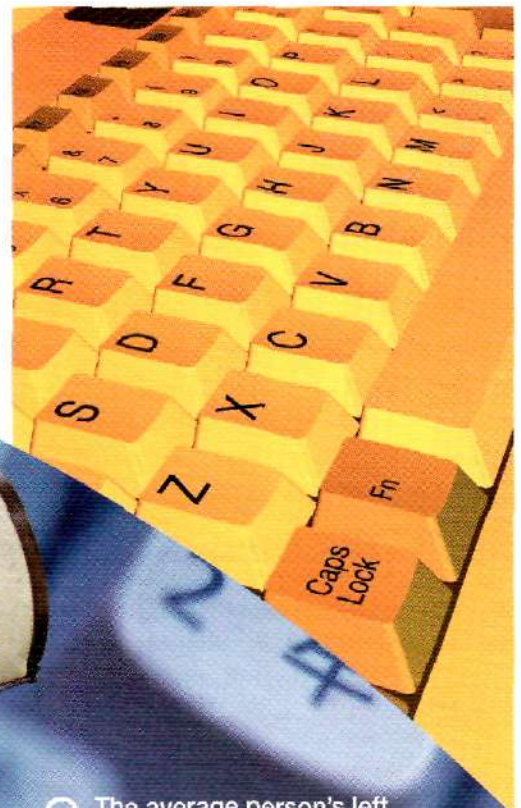
- How often do you use a computer?
- Do you use a computer for work or study?
- Can you type?

2 You are going to read a text about typing. Before you read, check you understand the words and phrases in the box.

average hurt keyboard  
medical condition thumb work skill

3  2.50 Read and listen to *Ten facts about ... typing* and mark each fact with one of the symbols below. Then compare with a partner.

- ✓ I knew this before.
- ✗ I didn't know this before.
- ! This is interesting.



1 Typing is one of the most important and basic work skills of the 21<sup>st</sup> Century.

2 Because mobile phones are now so popular, there is a new kind of typing – *thumbing*. Thumbing means using one or more thumbs to press the keys.

3 The average person can type between 20 and 35 words per minute. Advanced typists can work very quickly, at more than 110 words per minute.

4 The most common international English keyboard is QWERTY. It gets the name from the first six letters on the top left side of the keyboard. It is more than 130 years old.

5 Other keyboards include QWERTZ (in Germany and Central Europe) and AZERTY (in France and Belgium).



6 Languages with non-Roman alphabets, for example Arabic, Russian, Chinese or Japanese, have their own keyboards.

7 The sentence *The quick brown fox jumps over the lazy dog* is often used to practise typing because it uses every letter of the English alphabet.

8 The average person's left hand does 56 per cent of the typing.

9 Thumbing and typing can hurt you. RSI (repetitive strain injury) is the name of a medical condition you get if you type too much.

10 The 19<sup>th</sup> century German philosopher, Friedrich Nietzsche used a typewriter to stop his migraines.

# Ten facts about ... typing.

## Glossary

migraine (noun) – a very bad headache



## Grammar

*He can drive.*

*Can you speak English well?*

*I can't type very quickly.*

- use *can* with another verb to talk about ability
- add an adverb to say how you do the activity. For most adverbs, add *-ly*. Some adverbs are irregular, eg *good* – *well*

1 Look at the list of work skills and tick (✓) the ones you can do.

### Essential work skills for the 21<sup>st</sup> century

Can you ...

- use a computer?
- find information on the internet?
- work with other people?
- type?
- learn new things?

### English and the world of work

Can you ...

- understand instructions?
- answer the phone and write emails in English?
- read texts about your work in English?
- translate texts from English into your language?
- speak with your colleagues in English?

2 Make the adverb from the adjective in brackets.

I can type ...

easily. (*easy*)

- \_\_\_\_\_ (*quick*)
- \_\_\_\_\_ (*good*)
- \_\_\_\_\_ (*slow*)
- but not very \_\_\_\_\_ (*easy*)
- but not very \_\_\_\_\_ (*good*)
- but very \_\_\_\_\_ (*bad*)

3 Choose five phrases from the boxes in exercise 1 and make sentences about you.

*I can work with other people easily.*


*I can type, but not very quickly.*

*I can't answer the phone in English.*

4 Compare your sentences with a partner.

**G** Grammar focus – explanation & more practice of *can* on page 142

## Pronunciation


1  2.51 Read and listen to these quotes about work. What do you notice about the pronunciation of *can*?

One machine can do the work of fifty ordinary men. No machine can do the work of one extraordinary man.

**Elbert Hubbard**

I like work. I can sit and look at it for hours.

**Jerome K Jerome**

2  2.52 Read the rules. Listen and repeat the examples.

- in questions and affirmative sentences, *can* is normally unstressed and we say /kən/  
*I can type. Can you?*
- in negatives *can't* is produced in the full form  
*I can't drive a bus.*
- in short answers, *can* is normally stressed and we say /kæn/ and /kɑːnt/  
*Can you swim? Yes, I can.*

## Vocabulary

1 Match the abilities in the box to the pictures.

dance   draw   drive  
play a musical instrument   sing   swim

2 Work in pairs. Ask each other questions about the abilities in exercise 1.

a



b



c



d



e



f





## Part 3

Vocabulary &amp; Speaking

Types of school

Reading &amp; Listening

Important firsts ...  
centres of learning

Grammar

was / were

## Vocabulary and Speaking

1 2.53 Look at the different types of schools below. Put them in the order you attend them. Then listen and check your answers. Say the words.

## UK

primary school  
nursery school  
university  
secondary school

## US

elementary school  
kindergarten  
college  
high school

2 Match the places 1–5 to the descriptions a–e.

- 1 medical college
- 2 law school
- 3 library
- 4 boarding school
- 5 technical college

- a You can study to be a doctor here.
- b You can borrow books and CDs here.
- c You can study a specific skill here.
- d You can live at this school.
- e You can study to be a lawyer here.

3 Look at the graph. Does anything surprise you?

Average number of years children go to school



Source: UNESCO  
& International  
Literacy Institute

4 Work in pairs and discuss these questions.

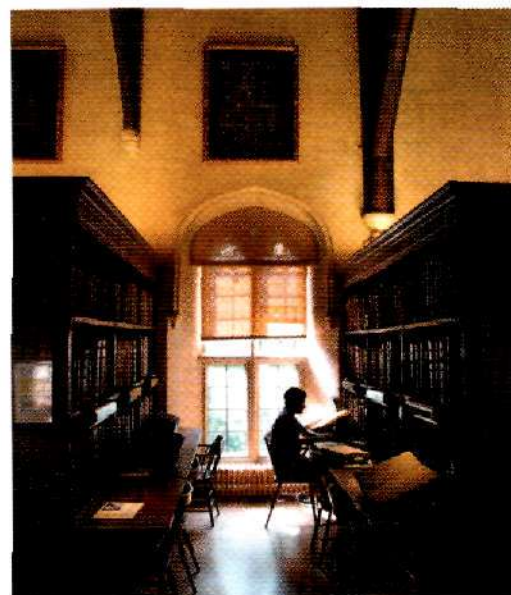
- How many years do children go to school in your country?
- How long is a school year?
- What are the best schools in your town?  
What are the best universities in your country?

## Reading and Listening

1 2.54 Read and listen to *Important firsts ... centres of learning* on page 71 and complete the first part of the table about Al Karaouine.

Name	Al Karaouine		University of London
First			distance learning programme
Where			
When		3 <sup>rd</sup> century BC	
Extra information	one of the most important education centres for Islamic studies	information on pieces of paper, called scrolls	

2 2.55–2.56 Listen to a lecture about two other important centres of learning and complete the rest of the table.





## Grammar

*It was one of the first universities.  
There weren't any books.*

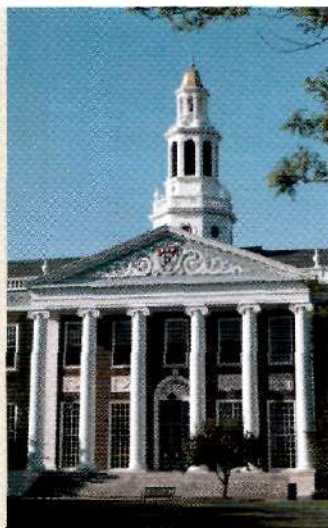
- *was / were* is the past form of the verb *be*
- use *was* with *I / he / she / it*
- use *were* with *you / we / they*
- form the negative with *not*

1 Complete the text about Harvard University with *was / were*.

### Harvard University

the first university in the United States. It was founded in 1636.

Harvard has many famous alumni (ex-students). More than 40 Nobel prize winners \_\_\_\_\_ Harvard University graduates. Seven presidents of the United States \_\_\_\_\_ students at the university, as well as former prime ministers of Canada, Pakistan, Jamaica, Singapore and Greece.



2 Look at the names of famous teachers in history. Write down as many sentences as you can in two minutes with the words in the circles.

3 Look at page 130. Which of your sentences from exercise 2 were true?

**G** Grammar focus – explanation & more practice of *was / were* on page 142.

Isaac Newton  
Albert Einstein  
Galileo Galilei and  
Maria Montessori  
Aristotle and Plato  
Confucius  
Paulo Freire

Italian  
Chinese  
English  
Greek  
Brazilian  
German

was  
were  
wasn't  
weren't

# Important firsts ... centres of learning

The University of Al Karaouine was founded in the city of Fes, Morocco in 859. It was a mosque, and one of the first universities. The university still exists today and it is now one of the most important education centres for Islamic studies.





## Part 4

### Vocabulary & Speaking

#### School subjects

#### Pronunciation

#### Two-syllable words

#### Reading & Listening

#### School days

#### Grammar

#### Questions with was / were

#### Speaking

#### Talking about school



## Vocabulary and Speaking

1 Match the subjects 1–9 to the things you study a–i.

- 1 maths
  - 2 biology
  - 3 chemistry
  - 4 history
  - 5 PE (physical education)
  - 6 ICT (information and communication technology)
  - 7 geography
  - 8 physics
  - 9 languages
- a French, English, German, Japanese
  - b football, hockey, basketball, gymnastics
  - c  $(a + b)^2 = a^2 + 2ab + b^2$
  - d countries, continents, oceans, mountains
  - e plants, animals
  - f  $E = mc^2$
  - g 1066, 1492, 1939–1945
  - h  $H_2SO_4$ ,  $H_2O$ ,  $CO_2$
  - i Word, Excel, PowerPoint

**Language note:** we use expressions with *be* + adjective + preposition to talk about abilities and interest.

*When I was at school I was good at languages.*

*My daughter is interested in art.*

*I was terrible at sport.*

2 Work in pairs. Read the language note and look at the subjects in exercise 1 again. Without speaking, write five sentences about your partner.

*I think you were very good at history when you were at school.*

*I don't think you were good at maths.*

3 Read your sentences to your partner. Were you right?

4 Discuss these questions.

- Do you have all these subjects in your country?
- Do you study any other subjects in your country?
- Which foreign languages do people study in your country?
- Which do you think are the three most important subjects for young people today?

5 Read the information in the box. How would you answer the questions?

## Foreign languages ... important to know?

In a recent study of people across Europe, people answered these questions:

Is it important for your children to learn other languages?

93% said yes

Is it important to know another language?

72% said yes

Can you speak more than one foreign language?

26% said yes

Foreign languages ...

## Pronunciation

1 2.57 Listen and repeat the words. How many syllables do the words have? Which is the stressed syllable?

physics English language

2 Find examples of two-syllable words like this in the classroom.

table, teacher, pencil ...



**Lindsay Clandfield** and **Kate Pickering** are English teachers and writers. He is from Canada and she is from England. They are the authors of *Global Elementary*.

#### Glossary

**rough** (adjective) – a place where there is crime or violence

**1** **Kate:** North London. It wasn't very near my house.  
**Lindsay:** My school was in Canada, in Toronto.

**2** **Lindsay:** My school was a bilingual school. Half my school subjects were in French and the other half were in English.  
**Kate:** It was an all-girls school. Some of the first women doctors, lawyers and engineers in Britain were at my school.

**3** **Kate:** A long time! From the age of 7 to 18.

**Lindsay:** I was at this school for five years, from 13 to 18 years old.

**4** **Lindsay:** My favourite subject was English. My least favourite subject was maths. It was boring and I wasn't very good at it.

**Kate:** My favourite subject was German. The teacher was very good. My least favourite? Physics! I wasn't very good at science and I was terrible at physics.

**5** **Kate:** Yes – it was a good school with opportunities to do other things – art, music, theatre and sports. I had a good time.

**Lindsay:** Yeah. The school was a bit rough and sometimes a bit scary. But the teachers were good. I still have some friends from that school, which is a bit unusual 20 years later.

## Reading and Listening

**1** Work in pairs. Think of some answers to these questions.

- Were you happy at school?
- How long were you at the school?
- What type of school was it?
- Where was your school?
- What was your favourite and least favourite subject?

*Were you happy at school?*

*Yes, I was. / No, it was horrible. / It was OK.*

**2** Read Lindsay and Kate's answers to the questions above. Then write the questions in the correct positions in the text.

**3**  **2.58** Listen and check your answers.

**4** Read the statements and circle the correct option.

- 1 *He / She* was at school in North London.
- 2 There were two languages at *his / her* school.
- 3 *He / She* was at this school for 11 years.
- 4 *He / She* was bored in maths classes.
- 5 *He / She* has friends from *his / her* schooldays.

### Extend your vocabulary – a (little) bit

The expressions *a bit* and *a little bit* are informal. They mean the opposite of *a lot*.

*The school was a bit rough and sometimes a bit scary.*

Work with a partner. Think of ...

- a television show that is a little bit boring.
- a restaurant in your town that is a bit expensive.
- some English grammar that is a bit difficult.
- a film that is a bit sad.

## Grammar

*Were you happy at school?*

*Where was your school?*

- use *was / were* + subject for yes / no questions
- use a *wh-* question word + *was / were* + subject for other questions

**1** Put the words in the correct order to make questions. Then answer the questions.

Confucius Where born was ?

*Where was Confucius born?*

- 1 Plato from and Where Aristotle were ?
- 2 and Where Maria Montessori when born was ?
- 3 a Isaac Was Newton scientist ?
- 4 Brazil Who in 1921 in born was ?
- 5 German teacher and scientist Which born in 1879 was ?

**2** Look at page 130 and check your answers to exercise 1.

**G** **Grammar focus** – explanation & more practice of questions on page 142

## Speaking

Work in pairs. Ask about school. Use the questions from Reading and Listening exercise 1 to help you.







## Warm up

Look at the pictures of different types of meetings. Where are they? Describe the pictures.

### Useful phrases

- I think this is in ...
- It's in a ...
- (Perhaps) this is a photo of ...

### Useful language

- an office
- a staff meeting
- business meeting
- a class
- an interview
- the boss

## Listening

**1** 2.59–2.61 Match the situations below to a picture above. Then listen to three conversations from different meetings and match them to the situations.

- in a classroom
- in a business meeting
- in the boss's office

**2** Listen again. Circle the correct option.

Conversation 1: The *man / woman* has to send some emails.

Conversation 2: The *man / woman* has a new job.

Conversation 3: The *man / woman* takes the photo.

## Language focus: making requests and responses

**1** Put the words in order to make requests or responses.

- 1 finish please Can quickly we ?
- 2 your books open please you Can ?
- 3 the door close you Could ?
- 4 sorry No, I'm .
- 5 ten minutes in to finish like I'd .
- 6 of Yes, course .

**2** 2.62 Complete the table below. Use the sentences in exercise 1 to help you. Then listen and check.

### Requests

_____ I / we	finish quickly	please? please.
Could I / we	talk about the next thing	
I'd _____ to		
Can you	close the door	
_____ you	take our photo	
	explain it again	

### Responses

Yes, of _____.
Sure.
No, I'm _____ but ...

**3** Make requests with the words in brackets.

use your pen (I)

*Can I use your pen please? Could I use your pen please?*

- 1 help me with my homework (you)
- 2 finish early today (we)
- 3 have a cup of tea (I)
- 4 close the window (you)
- 5 use that dictionary (I)
- 6 explain that again (you)

## Speaking

Work in pairs. Choose **one** of the tasks below.

**A** Practise making the requests from Language focus exercise 3. One person asks, the other responds. Then swap roles and repeat.

**B** Choose one of the meetings in the warm up. Prepare a dialogue. Include two or three requests. Read your dialogue.



## Warm up

1 Answer the question below. Write two or three sentences.

Who was your favourite teacher at school?

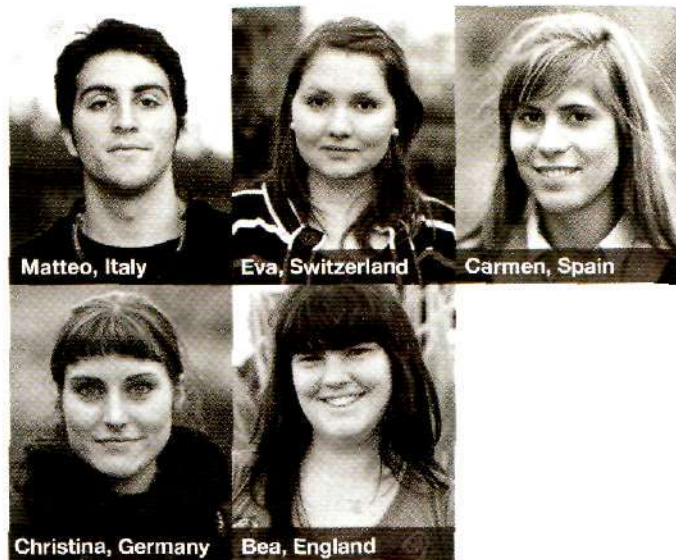
*My favourite teacher was ...*

*He/she was interesting/nice/friendly/intelligent ...*

*His/her lessons were ...*

2 Work with a partner. Read your sentences to each other.

## Listening



1 2.63–2.67 Listen to five people answering the question *Who was your favourite teacher at school?* Tick (✓) the kinds of teachers you hear.

Ancient Greek teacher    English teacher  
French teacher    German teacher  
History teacher    Mathematics teacher

2 Listen again and circle the correct option.

- 1 Matteo, Italy: His favourite teacher was in *high school / elementary school*.
- 2 Eva, Switzerland: Her favourite teacher was *young and interesting / interested in young people*.
- 3 Carmen, Spain: Mathematics was really *easy / difficult* with her favourite teacher.
- 4 Christina, Germany: *The teacher was / the lessons were* inspiring.
- 5 Bea, England: Her favourite teacher was in *primary / secondary* school.

## Language focus: *I think* and *I think that*

**Language note:** *I think* is one of the most common expressions in English. Use it to give an opinion or say something you think is true.

You can use *I think* at the beginning or end of a sentence.

***I think*** my favourite teacher was my English teacher.

My favourite teacher was my English teacher, ***I think***.

You can also use *I think that* at the beginning of a sentence.

***I think that*** my favourite teacher was my history teacher.

Choose the correct sentence.

- 1 a I think is a very good school.  
b I think it is a very good school.
- 2 a I think that education is important.  
b Education is important, I think that.
- 3 a I think that my history teacher was my favourite teacher.  
b I think that was my history teacher my favourite teacher.

## Speaking

Work in pairs. Choose **three** topics and tell your partner your opinion.

- a very good school in your city
- your worst teacher from the past
- a very difficult subject to learn
- an interesting fact in this book
- a boring subject at school



## Unit 6 Writing a job application

### Reading

Read the job advertisement and Tania's job application letter. Then answer the questions.

- 1 What job does she want?
- 2 Where does she work now?
- 3 Do you think she can do the job well? Why / why not?

**Waiter / waitress required for busy waterfront coffee bar.**

Previous experience and knowledge of foreign languages desirable.

Apply to: Des Vines, Café Coco, Level 2, Novotel, Sydney Brighton Beach.



Hello, my name is Tania Pedroso and I'd like to apply to be a waitress in your coffee bar.

I'm 25 years old and I'm from Portugal. My parents have a small café in Oporto and I often help them. Now I'm in Sydney. I work in an ice cream parlour three evenings a week but I'd like a full-time job.

I believe I can do this job very well. I can speak three languages – Portuguese, Spanish and English. I can work quickly and I'm good at making different types of coffee (for example espresso, cappuccino, latte). I'm friendly and I like meeting people. I'm also hard-working and efficient.

Please write soon,

Yours sincerely,

Tania

### Writing skills: writing a formal letter

- 1 Read about how to write a formal letter.
  - a Start the letter with *Dear ...*, **not** *Hello* or *My name is ...*
  - b Start with the reason for writing the letter.
  - c Do not use contractions (*it's*, *don't*).
  - d Finish with *I look forward to hearing from you*.
  - e Write your full name at the end.
- 2 Which of the things a–e does Tania do?
- 3 Correct Tania's letter.

### Language focus: skills and personal qualities

- 1 Circle the correct option.

- 1 I am good *at* / *in* cooking.
- 2 I *am* / *have* a driving licence.
- 3 I like *work* / *working* with children.
- 4 I can *use* / *using* Excel.
- 5 I *am* / *have* hard-working.

- 2 Match the words in the box to the descriptions.

creative   efficient   friendly   patient   reliable

- 1 You can trust me. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 I don't get angry quickly. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 I like meeting people. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 I'm good at drawing and making things. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 I work quickly and do things well. \_\_\_\_\_

### Preparing to write

- 1 Work in pairs. Choose one of the jobs in the box to apply for in an English-speaking country.

an au pair   a bus driver   a cook   an office worker  
a sports coach   a tourist guide

- 2 Look at the skills and personal qualities below. Choose three important ones for the job you chose. Can you think of some others?

#### Describing skills and personal qualities

- I can drive / speak three languages / work quickly.
- I am good at cooking / looking after children / cleaning.
- I am friendly / efficient / creative / patient / reliable / hard-working.
- I like meeting people / sports.
- I have a driving licence / experience of working in bars.

### Writing

- 1 Write an application for the job. Use the useful phrases to help you. Write three paragraphs. Remember to start and finish the letter correctly.

Paragraph 1: Reason for writing the letter

Paragraph 2: Personal information

Paragraph 3: Skills and personal qualities

- 2 Work in pairs. Compare your letters. Can you make any corrections?



## Grammar

1 Write sentences about what Henry can and can't do at work.

sports facilities ✓ *He can use the sports facilities.*

- 1 company restaurant ✓      4 no company car park ✗  
2 personal phone calls ✗      5 professional training ✓  
3 company gym ✓

2 Complete the dialogue with *was, were, wasn't* or *weren't*.

- A: What \_\_\_\_\_ your favourite subject at school?  
B: My favourite subjects \_\_\_\_\_ music and art.  
A: \_\_\_\_\_ you good at English?  
B: No, I \_\_\_\_\_ terrible. But that's because the lessons  
\_\_\_\_\_ very interesting.

## Vocabulary

1 Find six school subjects in the grid.

2 Decide if the statements are true (T) or false (F). If they are false correct them by changing the underlined words or phrases.

- 1 An engineer works in a laboratory.  
2 A multinational is a big company.  
3 A doctor works with animals.  
4 You can buy books and CDs in a library.  
5 Children go to primary school before nursery school.  
6 An architect can draw well.  
7 High school in the US is called secondary school in the UK.  
8 Children live at a technical college.  
9 You can study to be a doctor at a law school.  
10 A piano is a type of job.

O	Y	C	A	H	L	D	R	I	S
C	B	O	J	G	S	H	L	Y	C
E	I	D	R	E	R	B	E	T	H
T	O	M	U	O	R	M	N	G	I
P	L	A	N	G	U	A	G	E	S
I	O	P	A	R	E	T	H	A	T
P	G	U	L	A	T	H	U	N	O
A	Y	T	I	P	A	S	T	E	R
L	V	I	N	H	T	O	U	S	Y
T	A	P	H	Y	S	I	C	S	E

## Speaking

1 Work in groups of three. Ask questions about abilities starting with *Can you ...?*

Find three things that ...

- everybody can do well.
- everybody can do, but not well.
- nobody can do.

2 Think of a job. Say what you can and can't do. The other students in the group guess the job.

## Learning grammar

1 Work in pairs. Write down the page numbers in *Global Elementary* where you can find these things.

- the Grammar focus explanations for units 1 and 2
- the Grammar focus practice for unit 5
- the Grammar focus explanation for *can*
- the Grammar focus exercises for *was / were*

2 Read sentences 1–4 and find an example of each type of word below.

- 1 Does he work for a big company?  
2 There's a lot of milk in the fridge.  
3 English people speak quickly.  
4 Do you like bananas? I love them.

verb	<i>speak</i>
adjective	_____
adverb	_____
preposition	_____
article	_____
countable noun	_____
uncountable noun	_____
pronoun	_____
auxiliary verb	_____
quantifier	_____

3 Work in pairs and compare your answers. Can you think of another example of each type of word?

4 Tick (✓) the sentences which are true for you.

- \* I enjoy learning grammar.
- \* I study grammar rules at home.
- \* I use a grammar book.
- \* I make grammar notes.
- \* I do practice exercises at home.
- \* I practise grammar on a computer.
- \* I write true sentences to practise grammar.
- \* I study homework corrections.

5 Work in pairs and compare your answers. Write one new activity you can do to practise grammar.



## Part 1

Reading &amp; Listening

The news ... from  
local to global

Grammar

Past simple (regular  
verbs)

Writing

A biography


## Reading and Listening

1 Make these sentences true for you. Then compare with a partner.

- 1 I buy a newspaper *every day / three times a week / once a week*.
- 2 I *always / sometimes / never* read the news in English.
- 3 I *listen / don't listen* to the radio in the morning.
- 4 I prefer to *read a newspaper / watch the news on TV*.
- 5 I *always / sometimes / never* read the news on the internet.

2 Read the introduction to *The news ... from local to global* about important events in radio and TV news.

3 Read the rest of the text. Then in pairs, decide when each event happened. Write the decade (1920s, 1970s, etc) on the left. They are in the order they happened.

4  3.01 Listen and check your answers. Write the exact year on the right.



150 years ago there was no radio or television. People read about the news in newspapers, or heard information from neighbours or visiting friends.

Now news travels in seconds. Here are some of the most important dates in the history of global news.

## The news ... from local to global

## Decade

## Event

## Exact Year

1850s

Paul Reuter used the telegraph to send news and financial information in Europe.

1851

Station 8MK in Detroit presented the first radio news programme.

The BBC World Service radio started.

The BBC started its first foreign language radio service – in Arabic.

1960s

AT&T (American Telephone & Telegraph) launched Telstar into orbit. It was the first active TV and communications satellite.

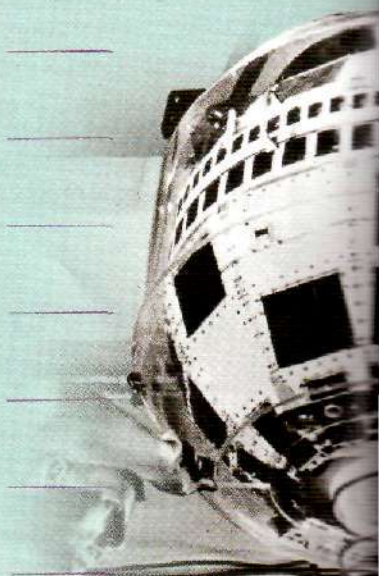
600 million people worldwide watched Neil Armstrong on the moon.

A newspaper in Ohio produced the first digital newspaper on the internet.

Ted Turner created the Cable News Network (CNN) on TV, the first 24-hour news channel.

1990s

Al Jazeera, the first international Arabic news channel started in Doha, Qatar.





## Grammar

1 Look at *The news ... from local to global* text again and circle the verbs. What do you notice about the spelling?

*Al Jazeera started in Doha.*

*8MK presented the first radio news programme.*

- use the past simple to talk about completed actions in the past, usually at a specific time
- these time expressions are common with the past simple: *yesterday, last week / month / year, two years ago*

2 Read about another international news channel and write the verbs in the past tense.

### Channel News Asia

In the late 1990s MediaCorp \_\_\_\_\_  
(decide) to create the first pan-Asian  
news channel and in 1999 they \_\_\_\_\_  
(start) Channel News Asia. A recent survey  
\_\_\_\_\_ (study) the CNA audience and  
\_\_\_\_\_ (discover) that 52 per cent  
of business professionals in Singapore  
regularly \_\_\_\_\_ (watch) the station.

3 Rewrite the headlines in the past tense. Start with the words in brackets.

**Police officers at Dublin airport stop four mafia leaders (yesterday)**

**The Boston Symphony Orchestra play final concert of their European tour (last night)**

**The President visits Harvard University and discusses politics with student leaders (two days ago)**

**Teachers demand more money from the government (last Monday)**

**More people study English than any other language (last year)**

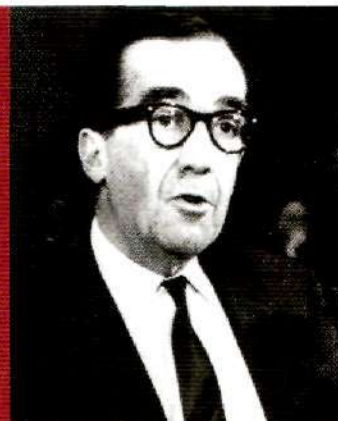
**G Grammar focus** – explanation  
& more practice of the past simple on page 144

## Writing

1 Read *Good night and good luck* about Ed Murrow. Why was he famous?

### Good night and good luck

Ed Murrow was one of America's most popular newsreaders. He was born on 25 April 1908 in North Carolina. He studied at Washington State College and when he finished he moved to New York. He married Janet Brewster in 1935 and in the same year started work at CBS (the Columbia Broadcasting System). In the 1950s millions of Americans watched his nightly news programme. His last phrase every night was 'Good Night and Good Luck'. Always a heavy smoker, he died of cancer in 1965.



2 Look at the text again. Complete the sentences with an appropriate preposition. Then underline an example from the text.

### Time

for decades use in

for complete dates use \_\_\_\_\_

for years use \_\_\_\_\_

### Place

for institutions use \_\_\_\_\_

for countries and states use \_\_\_\_\_

for movement to a place use \_\_\_\_\_

3 You are going to write your own mini autobiography, but in the third person (*he / she*). Use the ideas below to help you. Write 50 to 100 words but don't write your name on the text.

### Useful phrases

- He / She was born in ... (place) in (year)
- He / She studied (subject) at (school)
- He / She lived in (place) and worked in (place)
- He / She married (person) in (year)

4 Give your text to your teacher. Read the autobiographies of other students in the class. Can you guess who they are?





## Part 2

## Reading &amp; Listening

## The Watergate scandal

## Grammar

## Past simple (irregular verbs)

## Pronunciation

## The past simple

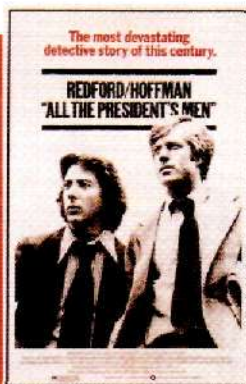
## Speaking

## A news story

## Reading and Listening

1 Read the information below about the book *All the President's Men* by Woodward and Bernstein. Do you know the story of the Watergate scandal?

*All the President's Men* is the name of a book by the news reporters, Carl Bernstein and Bob Woodward. It tells the story of the Watergate scandal, a big political scandal in the United States. The reporters discovered that Richard Nixon, the American president at the time, spied on the opposition, the Democratic party. The Woodward and Bernstein news story ended Nixon's Presidency.



## Chapter One

June 17, 1972. Nine o'clock Saturday morning. Woodward answered his phone. It was the city news editor of *The Washington Post*. That morning, the police had arrested five men at Democratic headquarters. The men had cameras and electronic equipment. The city editor wanted to know: could Woodward come into the office? Woodward left his apartment and walked to the offices of *The Washington Post*. The newsroom was usually quiet on Saturday morning. Saturday was a day for long lunches and reading the weekend newspapers. Not today. At the front of the newsroom Woodward heard some more news about the burglary. It wasn't at the small local Democratic Party office, but the main headquarters in the Watergate office. That's interesting, he thought.

Woodward picked up the phone and made some calls. He looked across the room and saw Bernstein, another reporter at *The Post*. Carl Bernstein always knew a good story when he saw one, and often got his name on it.



Front page news: President Nixon resigns 9 August, 1974.

2 You are going to read an extract about the Watergate scandal. Check you understand the words in the box.

arrest burglary  
Democratic party (US politics)  
editor headquarters

3 3.02 Read and listen to the extract from chapter one of *All the President's Men*. Then using the words in exercise 2, tell a partner what it is about.

4 Read the text again. Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)?

- 1 Woodward phoned the editor at nine o'clock on Saturday morning.
- 2 The editor wanted Woodward to come to the office.
- 3 The newsroom was usually busy on Saturday mornings.
- 4 Woodward thought the burglary was unusual.
- 5 Woodward didn't know Bernstein.

5 Do you know any other stories or films about reporters? What are they?

### Extend your vocabulary – history and story

*History* is the study of the past and a subject we study at school. It's normally an uncountable noun.

A *story* is a description of events. It is something we read or something we tell to entertain people.

Choose the correct word.

- 1 I'm very interested in the *history* / *story* of Ancient Egypt.
- 2 We talked to the police, but they didn't believe our *history* / *story*.
- 3 My nephew studied American political *history* / *story* at university.
- 4 When I was a child, my dad always read me a *history* / *story* before I went to bed.
- 5 My brother's a *history* / *story* professor at York University.

## Glossary

a **scandal** (noun) – a situation, often when someone famous does something dishonest

**reporters** (noun) – people who write stories for newspapers

**spy** (verb) – to watch somebody secretly



## Grammar

Woodward **answered** his phone.  
The men **had** cameras.  
Woodward **left** his apartment.


- some verbs are regular in the past simple and finish **-ed**
- other verbs are irregular, *have – had, leave – left*


**1** Look at the verbs in the box. Are they regular or irregular? Check in the text, then write the past form.

answer   get   have   hear   know  
leave   look   make   pick up   see  
walk


**2** Complete the sentences with the past form of the verbs in brackets.

- 1 Woodward and Bernstein \_\_\_\_\_ (be) two Washington news reporters.
- 2 They \_\_\_\_\_ (hear) about a burglary at the Democratic headquarters.
- 3 They \_\_\_\_\_ (go) out and \_\_\_\_\_ (ask) people questions.
- 4 They \_\_\_\_\_ (write) about it in *The Washington Post* newspaper.
- 5 The story \_\_\_\_\_ (get) bigger and bigger.
- 6 It \_\_\_\_\_ (become) a scandal for the United States government.
- 7 The story \_\_\_\_\_ (end) Richard Nixon's presidency.
- 8 In 1976 they \_\_\_\_\_ (make) a film from the book.
- 9 Robert Redford and Dustin Hoffman \_\_\_\_\_ (be) in the film.
- 10 The film \_\_\_\_\_ (win) four Oscars.

**3**  **3.03** Listen and check your answers. Say the sentences.

 **Grammar focus** – explanation & more practice of the past simple on page 144

## Pronunciation

**1**  **3.04** Listen to how the infinitive and the past form of these verbs are pronounced. Repeat the words.

answer – answered  
wait – waited  
stop – stopped  
look – looked  
end – ended  
listen – listened  
start – started  
walk – walked

**2** Underline the correct word to complete the rule.

- if a regular verb ends in **-ted** or **-ded** pronounce / don't pronounce an extra syllable

**3** Work in groups. Take turns and read the extract from *All the President's Men* aloud. Pay attention to the past tense verbs.

## Speaking

**1** Work in pairs. Write down ...

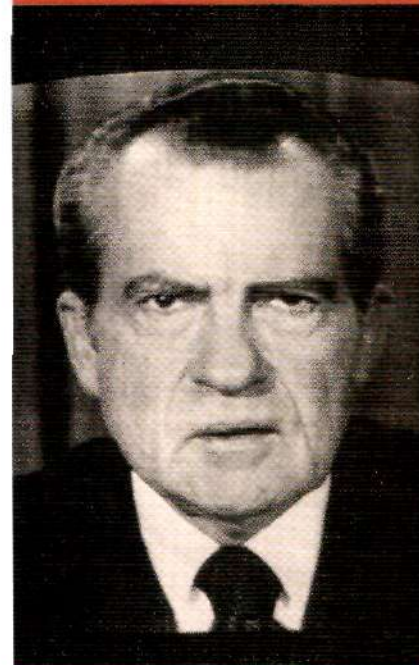
- 1 the name of a person you know.
- 2 a restaurant or hotel you know.
- 3 a food.
- 4 a topic of conversation.
- 5 another topic of conversation.
- 6 a question.
- 7 an answer.
- 8 a time.
- 9 the name of a newspaper.

**2** Now turn to page 131 and complete the news story with the words from exercise 1.

**3** Work with another pair. Tell each other your news stories.



Bob Woodward, left, and Carl Bernstein were in their 20s when they began investigating the Watergate story.



Front page news: President Nixon resigns 9 August, 1974.



## Part 3

Vocabulary

Weather

Reading

The great Eskimo vocabulary hoax

Grammar

It

Speaking

Conversations with it



## Vocabulary

1 Match the words to the pictures.

clouds rain snow sun wind

2 Read the language note, then complete the sentences with the correct form of the word in brackets.

**Language note:** to make the adjective of these weather words, add -y: *wind* – *windy*

It was *windy* yesterday. (*wind*)

- The \_\_\_\_\_ season is from July to October. (*rain*)
- Children don't go to school if the weather is \_\_\_\_\_. (*snow*)
- It was \_\_\_\_\_ this morning when I got up. (*cloud*)
- If it's \_\_\_\_\_ at the weekend, many people go to the beach. (*sun*)

3 Put the words in order from cold to hot.

- cold
- freezing
- hot
- cool
- boiling
- warm

4 What's hot for you? What's cold for you? Decide on a temperature range for each word. Compare with a partner. Then turn to page 131 to see what someone from Jordan and someone from Siberia think.

## Reading

1 Read the sentence. Do you think it's true (T) or false (F)?

*Eskimos have more words for snow than other people.*

2 3.05 Read and listen to *The great Eskimo vocabulary hoax* on page 83. Then choose the correct answer to exercise 1.

- The sentence is true.
- The sentence is false.
- It's impossible to say.

3 Read the text again and match the two parts of the sentences below.

- Whorf believed that Eskimos had different words for snow because
- The number of Eskimo words for snow
- Many people don't like
- Lots of languages have many words

- for snow.
- the word Eskimo.
- grew and grew.
- they see snow differently.

4 How many words for snow are there in your language?





# The great Eskimo vocabulary hoax

## Do Eskimos really have more words for snow?

How many words do the Eskimos have for snow? In 1911, one book said there were four words. Some years later, another book said there were seven. In 1940 Benjamin Whorf, an American linguist, said that Eskimos have different words for snow because they see snow differently.

Over the years the story continued, and the numbers grew. Some books said that the Eskimos had a hundred words for snow, others said thousands. So, how many are there really? The truth is there isn't an easy answer to the question.

First of all, there isn't only one Eskimo language, there are many. Also, native people of the Arctic don't use the word *Eskimo*. They don't like it. They call themselves *Inuit* or *Aleut*. And finally, having words for different types of snow really isn't unusual: there are many words for snow in other languages too. In English, for example, we have *sleet* (a mix of snow and rain), *slush* (part snow, part water) or a *blizzard* (a snowstorm) and others.

Linguists call Whorf's idea *The great Eskimo vocabulary hoax*. So the next time someone tells you that Eskimos have 1,000 words for snow, tell them it isn't true!

## Grammar

Native people don't use the word Eskimo.

They don't like it.

It's sunny today.

It's six o'clock.

- use *it* to replace singular nouns
- we also use *it* to talk about the weather and to talk about the time

1 What does *it* refer to in the sentences? Use the words in the box. There is one word you do not need.

a linguist   blizzard   Inuit or Aleut   sleet  
slush   The great Eskimo vocabulary hoax

It is a more correct word for Eskimo.

Inuit or Aleut

- 1 It is the story of how the number of Eskimo words for *snow* grew.
- 2 It is a mixture of snow and rain.
- 3 It is the English word for a snowstorm.
- 4 It is a kind of snow that is part snow and part water.

2 The conversations below are missing the word *it* four times. Complete them by putting *it* in the correct places.

1

A: Excuse me, what time is?

B: Oh, is ten past six.

A: Thanks.

2

A: Is this your car?

B: Yes, is.

A: It's very nice.

3

A: Would you like to go to the park?

B: Now? Is cold and rainy.

A: Oh.

3  3.06–3.08 Listen and check your answers.

 **Grammar focus** – explanation & more practice of *it* on page 144

## Speaking

Work in pairs. Choose **one** of the tasks below.

**A** Read the conversations from Grammar exercise 2 together.

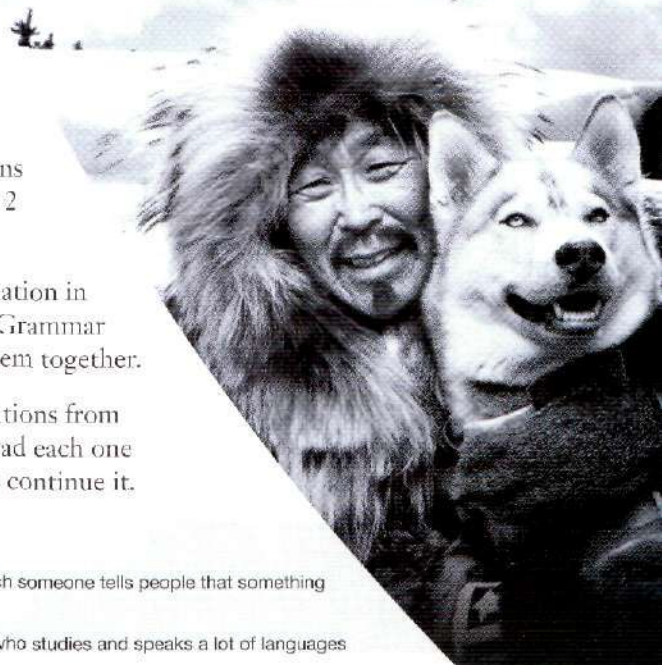
**B** Change some information in the conversations from Grammar exercise 2. Then read them together.

**C** Choose two conversations from Grammar exercise 2. Read each one together and then try to continue it.

## Glossary

a **hoax** (*noun*) – a trick in which someone tells people that something is true when it is not true

a **linguist** (*noun*) – someone who studies and speaks a lot of languages





# Unit 7 News & Weather

## Part 4

### Speaking

#### Opinions about weather

### Reading & Listening

#### Storm chasing

### Grammar

#### Past simple (questions and negative)

### Pronunciation

#### /w/ and /h/

### Speaking

#### A great day out

## Speaking

1 Complete the sentences with your opinions, using the type of word indicated in brackets.

- I hate \_\_\_\_\_ days. (weather adjective)
- I love it when it's \_\_\_\_\_. (weather adjective)
- In my country, the best weather is in \_\_\_\_\_. (place)
- My favourite time of year is \_\_\_\_\_. (month)

2 Work in pairs. Compare your sentences.

A: *I love it when it's sunny.*


B: *Why?*

A: *Because we go to the beach.*

## Reading and Listening

**storm** /stɔ:ɪn/ (*noun*) when a lot of rain or snow falls very quickly, often with very strong winds or thunder and lightning

1 Read *Storm chasing* on page 85 and look at the pictures. Which two pictures describe it?

2  3.09 Now read *Storm chasing* again and complete the text with the phrases below. Then listen and check your answers.

- 1 Last August.
- 2 Because a friend invited me.
- 3 In France.
- 4 My friend Daniel.
- 5 Really, really scared.
- 6 Well the most important thing was a specially converted car.





# Storm chasing: a great day out?

## Grammar

*Why did you go storm chasing?*

*Did you have any special equipment?*

*I didn't really know anything about storm chasing.*

- use the auxiliary *did* to make questions and negatives in the past simple
- for questions the structure is (*Wh-* question word) + *did* + subject + infinitive
- for negatives the structure is subject + *didn't* + infinitive

**1** Rewrite these sentences about the text so they are true.

- Alan knew a lot about storm chasing the first time.
- Alan went with his girlfriend Joanne.
- They chased the storm in a bus.
- The car had lots of metal.
- Lightning hit the car twice.

**2** Correct the questions.

- Where did go you?
- Who you go with?
- How did you travelled?
- What did you there?
- Had you a good time?

**G** Grammar focus ~ explanation  
& more practice of the past simple on page 144

## Pronunciation

**1** 3.10 Which word is pronounced differently? Listen and circle the word.

- why what when who where
- how hotel hour house hungry

**2** Complete the sentences with words with the same sound.

- Last Wednesday, the weather was \_\_\_\_\_.
- Harry has a \_\_\_\_\_.
- William works \_\_\_\_\_.
- Hello! How are you? I'm \_\_\_\_\_.

**3** Work in pairs and swap your sentences. Read them aloud.

We normally use the expression *a great day out* when we go somewhere for fun. But Alan's day out was very unusual – and maybe *fun* isn't the right word!

### What is storm chasing?

Storm chasing is when people go out in bad weather. They want to get very, very near to a storm and take photos of extreme weather conditions.

### Why did you go storm chasing?

\_\_\_\_\_ This friend, well he did it all the time and said it was amazing. I didn't really know anything about storm chasing.

### Who did you go with?

\_\_\_\_\_ I knew he was a bit crazy but I didn't know how crazy!

### When did you go?

\_\_\_\_\_ We went in the summer – they say it's the best time of year to chase storms.

### And where?

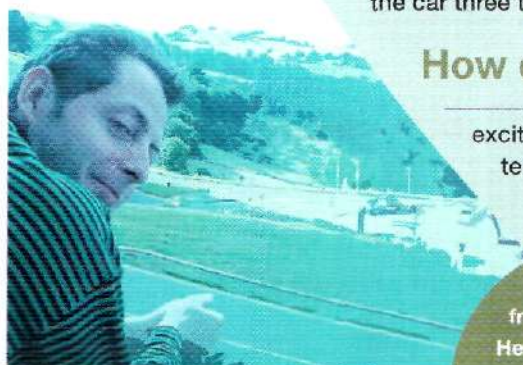
\_\_\_\_\_ Daniel lives near the Pic du Midi in the Pyrenees. It's a great place for storm chasing.

### Did you have any special equipment?

\_\_\_\_\_ It didn't have any metal, but it had lots of plastic and rubber. That protects you from lightning. And you know what? Lightning hit the car three times!

### How did you feel?

\_\_\_\_\_ I mean it was really exciting but it was also the most terrifying experience of my life.



Alan is from London, UK. He often goes storm chasing with his friend, Daniel. He also likes taking photographs and filming videos of storms.

## Speaking

Work in pairs. A: turn to page 127.  
B: turn to page 129. Use the questions in Grammar exercise 2 to ask your partner about a day out.



## Function globally speaking on the telephone



## Warm up

1 Put the sentences in the correct order to make a conversation to International Directory Enquiries.

And what's the name of the city or town you would like to call? \_\_\_\_

P, for Paul. \_\_\_\_

The United States. 2

Thank you. The number is 312 567 8741. \_\_\_\_

Chicago, Illinois. \_\_\_\_

McGuinness. \_\_\_\_

What country would you like to call? 1

What is their first initial? \_\_\_\_

What is the last name of the person you would like to call? \_\_\_\_

2 Work in pairs. Read the conversation.

## Listening

1 3.11–3.14 Listen to four phone conversations. Match each one to a situation.

- a Someone's busy.                      c Someone's out.  
b One person can't hear well.      d Someone wants to meet.

2 Listen again. Are the statements true (T) or false (F)?

- 1 The man calls a newspaper office.
- 2 The man doesn't want to wait.
- 3 The man has important information.
- 4 The man has some photos for the woman.

3 What do you think the secret information is? Imagine what is in the photos. Tell a partner.

## Language focus: speaking on the telephone

1 Complete the table with the words and phrases in the box.

busy    call    calling    minute    speak to

Hello, Hi,	is that is	Susan? Susan there?
	Liz	speaking.
Can I	_____	Susan?
	leave a message for	
Who's	_____	please?
I'm sorry,	he / she's	_____
	out.	
	you have the wrong number.	
Sure,	just a _____ / second.	
	hold please.	
I'll	_____	you later.
	wait.	

2 3.15 Listen and check your answers. Then listen and repeat the phrases. What are the phrases in your language?

## Speaking

Work in pairs. Choose **one** of the tasks below.

**A** Repeat the Warm up exercise. One person is the operator and the other person is calling for information.

**B** Choose one of the situations from Listening exercise 1. Create a phone conversation. Use some of the expressions from the Language focus to help you.




## Warm up

1 Put the types of weather in order of preference from 1 (*I love this weather*) to 5 (*I hate this weather*).

- a cold, rainy day with clouds \_\_\_\_
- a rainy day, but warm \_\_\_\_
- a very cold day, but sunny \_\_\_\_
- a very hot day, with clouds \_\_\_\_
- a warm sunny day \_\_\_\_

2 Work in pairs and compare your answers.

## Listening

1  3.16–3.19 Listen to four people talk about their favourite weather. Which speaker does **not** say the word *sunny*?

- 1 Haruna, Japan
- 2 Maida, Switzerland
- 3 Al-Mutasem, Saudi Arabia
- 4 Mireille, US

2 Listen again and match the sentences a–e to the speakers 1–4 above. There is one extra sentence.

- a I don't like it when it is too hot.
- b I go out in sunny weather.
- c I obviously prefer it when it's warm.
- d If it's cloudy or like windy or snowy I don't go out.
- e The weather in Jeddah is always hot.

## Language focus: interjections

**Language note:** in spoken English, people often use *um* and *uh* to give themselves time to think of what they want to say.

*I really like, um, sunny, hot weather.*

Read what Mireille says about her favourite weather. Then listen again and complete the text with *um* or nothing.

\_\_\_\_ let's see ... I love – I like \_\_\_\_ sunny weather but I don't like it when it is too hot. \_\_\_\_ I like it sunny and cool \_\_\_\_ and so I like the English weather for that. \_\_\_\_ In California I like it \_\_\_\_ when it's sunny too but not too hot, but sunny and warm \_\_\_\_ enough to go to the beach.

## Speaking

Work in pairs. Take it in turns to finish the sentences below. Don't think too much before you finish the sentence. Use *um* and *uh* to give you time to think.

- My favourite weather is, um ...
- Today the weather was, uh ...
- When it's sunny outside I often ..., um, ...
- Summer in my country is never ..., um, ...



Haruna, Japan



Maida, Switzerland



Al-Mutasem, Saudi Arabia



Mireille, US



## UNIT 7 Writing describing an event

### Reading

1 Read Omar's report on a local event. What is the event and why is it important?

Last week the Sharjah World Book Fair took place in Sharjah, in the United Arab Emirates. The Sharjah World Book Fair lasted ten days. The Sharjah World Book Fair is famous all over the world. There were over one thousand publishers from many different countries at the Book Fair. Thousands of people visited the Book Fair.

The Book Fair had lots of different sections, including sections for children's books. Most books were in Arabic, but there were some books in English. Lots of different writers came to the fair. There were several activities for children. There was also a lot of delicious Arabic food.

The Sharjah World Book Fair takes place every year. Sheik Sultan bin Mohammed Al Qasemi, President of Sharjah visits the Book Fair. The aim of the Book Fair is to encourage young people to buy and read more books. The books are not usually very expensive.

2 Answer the questions about the report.

- 1 When did the event take place?
- 2 Where did it take place?
- 3 How long did it last?
- 4 How many people attended?
- 5 What happened at the event?
- 6 How often does it take place?
- 7 What is the aim of the event?
- 8 What did people buy, sell and eat?

### Writing skills: avoiding repetition

Use pronouns (*it, he, him, they, etc*) and *there* to avoid repetition.

1 Replace the underlined words and phrases in Omar's report with *it* or *there*.

2 Replace the underlined words or phrases in these sentences with a pronoun, or *there*.

- 1 There were many children's books. The children's books were attractive and not expensive.
- 2 Sharjah is in the United Arab Emirates. The Book Fair took place in Sharjah.
- 3 The president of Sharjah made a speech. The organiser of the event thanked the President.

### Language focus: writing about numbers

1 Complete the sentences from Omar's report.

- 1 There were \_\_\_\_\_ publishers from \_\_\_\_\_ different countries at the Book Fair.
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ people visited the Book Fair.
- 3 The Book Fair had \_\_\_\_\_ different sections.
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ books were in Arabic, but there were \_\_\_\_\_ books in English.
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_ different writers came to the fair.
- 6 There were \_\_\_\_\_ activities for children.

2 Read the text about an event in Rio de Janeiro, Brazil. Correct the underlined words and phrases.

Last month was the carnival in Rio. Thousand of foreigners visited it. A number of events took place during the day, but the most took place at night. There were severals visitors from all over the world, and lot of fireworks. Over ten thousand people watched the procession and most of people in the town took part in the dancing. It was a great event!

### Preparing to write

1 Make notes about an event that took place in your school, place of work, town, or country. Use the questions in the Reading section and the useful phrases to help you.

2 Work with a partner. Tell each other about the event. Use the past tense.

#### Describing an event

- It took place on / at / in ...
- Over a hundred / Thousands of people visited / attended it.
- There were speeches / fireworks.
- There were several sporting events including football, basketball and hockey.
- The aim of the event was to raise money for charity.

### Writing

Write about the event. Use your notes to help you.



## Grammar

1 Circle the correct option.

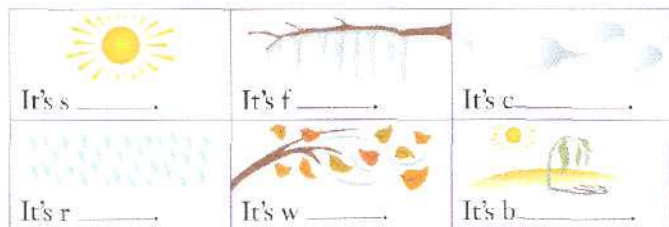
- 1 Where *you went* / *did you go* / *did you went* at the weekend?
- 2 Who *you went* / *did you go* / *did you* on holiday with?
- 3 How *did you travel* / *did you travelled* / *you travelled* to London?
- 4 What *did you* / *did you do* / *you did* last night?
- 5 *Did you have* / *Did you had* / *Had you* a good time at the party?
- 6 What time *it is* / *is* / *is it*?
- 7 *Is it* / *It is* / *Is* snowy in Alaska in December?
- 8 Blizzard *is* / *it is* / *is it* the English word for a snow storm.

2 Write the past tense of these verbs.

become _____	stop _____	play _____
know _____	win _____	study _____
make _____	hear _____	visit _____
see _____	leave _____	write _____

## Vocabulary

Complete the sentences with adjectives to describe the weather.



## Speaking and Writing

1 Work in pairs. Ask questions about what your partner did ...

- before the class.
- last night.
- at the weekend.
- on their last holiday.

Tell the class one thing about your partner.

2 Write three true sentences about the weather using *because*.

*I went swimming yesterday because it was sunny.*

3 Work in small groups. Read the first half of your sentences to the group. Can they guess the endings?

*I went swimming yesterday because ...*

## Remembering words

One way of remembering words is to put them in groups.

1 Work in pairs. Match the word groups 1–5 to the descriptions a–e. Then add two more words from the unit to each group.

- 1 cool, weather, rainy, \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_
  - 2 left, saw, knew, \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_
  - 3 sometimes, scandal, story, \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_
  - 4 wrote, snow, cold, \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_
  - 5 headquarters, news, arrest, \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_
- a They are the same word class (eg noun, verb etc)
  - b They start with the same letter.
  - c They are about the same topic.
  - d They are in the same reading text.
  - e They have the same sound.

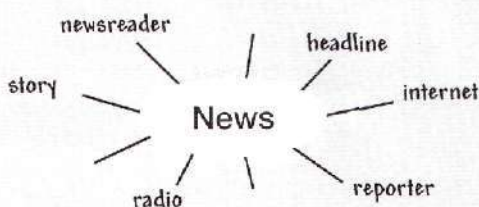
2 Which way of grouping words in exercise 1 do you prefer? Work in pairs and make a word group using words from this unit. Show your list to another pair. Do they understand how you grouped the words?

You can also remember words by making word associations. For example, one Spanish student remembers snow by thinking of the Spanish word for snow, *nevar*. *Nevar* is similar to *never*. She wrote the sentence: *It never snows in my city.*

3 Make some word associations for English words. Then work in pairs and explain the associations to your partner.

Spider diagrams are another way of remembering words.

4 Look at the spider diagram. Can you add any words?



5 Work in pairs. Make a spider diagram using *TV* or *weather*. Then show your diagram to another pair. Can they add any words?



## Coming &amp; Going

## Part 1

Vocabulary

Transport

Reading

Pedal power

Grammar

Present continuous

Pronunciation

/t/; sentence stress

Speaking

Transport

questionnaire

## Vocabulary

1 3.20 Listen and repeat the different methods of transport in the box.

by bicycle / bike    by boat    on foot  
by metro    by motorcycle / motorbike  
by train

## Useful phrases

- take the train / the bus / the metro
- travel by train / bus / car / metro / bike
- go on foot

**Language note:** in London, the metro is called *the underground* or *tube*. In New York, it is called *the subway*.

2 Choose three sentences. Complete them so they are true for you.

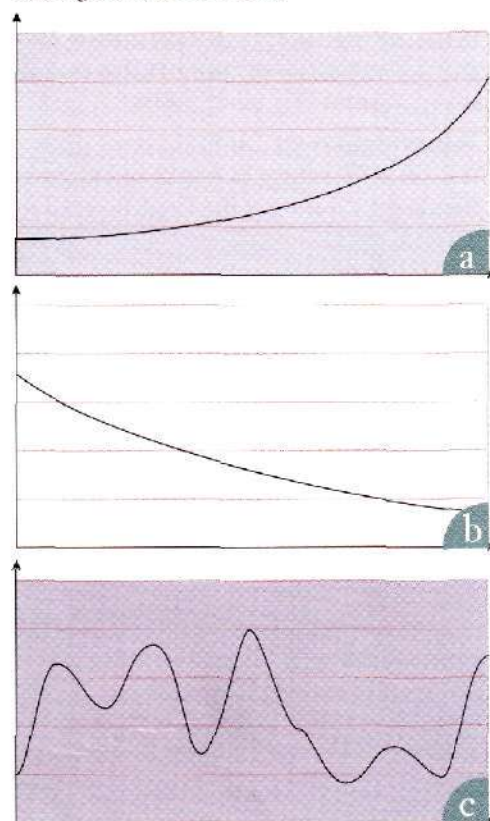
- I have a ...
- I take ... every day.
- I never go by ...
- I don't like travelling by ...
- When I was young, I travelled a lot by ...
- I came ... to class today.

3 Compare your sentences with a partner.

## Reading

1 Do you have a bike? How often do you travel by bike?

2 3.21 Read and listen to *Pedal power* on page 91 about bicycle use in Europe. Which chart goes with the text?

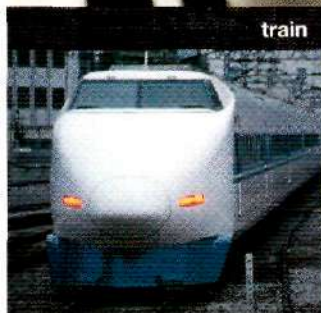


3 Read the text again. Are the statements true (T) or false (F)?

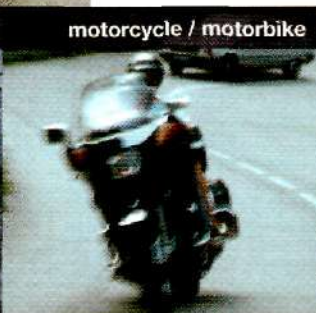
- 1 Julian usually takes his car to work.
  - 2 The bicycles in the Vélib' network aren't expensive.
  - 3 There is one Vélib' station in the city of Paris.
  - 4 Urban bicycle networks are more and more popular in Europe.
  - 5 Julian doesn't like Vélib'.
- 4 Discuss these questions in pairs.
- Do you think Vélib' and similar projects are a good idea?
  - Is there a similar scheme in your city?
  - Is bicycle use changing in your area?



on foot



train



motorcycle / motorbike



bicycle / bike



boat



metro



# Pedal power

Every day, Julian gets up, gets dressed and goes to work in Paris, France. He usually goes by car. This week is different. Julian isn't taking his car, he's going by bike.

Julian is one of Paris's 195,000 users of Vélib', a bicycle hire network which started in 2007. With Vélib', people can go to a special bicycle station and take a bicycle. They take it where they want to go, and leave it at another station. There are thousands of Vélib' stations around the city.

It isn't only in France. Across Europe, projects like Vélib' are becoming more popular. People are travelling more by bicycle and less by car. There are urban bicycle networks in cities in Spain, England, Austria, Germany, Holland, Denmark and Finland. Other countries across Europe are thinking of similar projects.

'It's great. The trip to work is not very long, I feel good and it's cheap.' says Julian.



## Grammar

Today he's **going** by bike.

People **are travelling** more by bicycle and less by car.

- use the present continuous to describe what is happening at this moment or around the present time
- these expressions are common with the present continuous: *now, these days, at the moment, this week / month / year*

1 Find another example of the present continuous in the text.

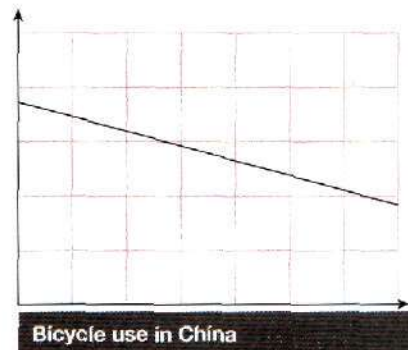
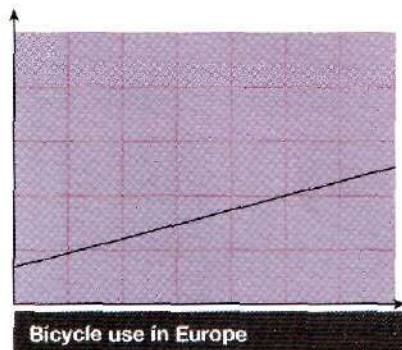
2 Complete the text below with the present continuous of the verb in brackets.

## End of the bicycle kingdom?

The bicycle industry began in China in the 1930s, and soon there were bicycles everywhere. People called China the *Bicycle kingdom*. But now the situation \_\_\_\_\_ (change). The economy \_\_\_\_\_ (grow), and Chinese people \_\_\_\_\_ (make) more money. They \_\_\_\_\_ (not buy) bicycles, they \_\_\_\_\_ (buy) cars. In 2005 there were 20 million cars in China. Now experts \_\_\_\_\_ (say) the number will be 140 million in the year 2020.

3 Make sentences about the graphs. Use the present continuous and one of the verbs in the box.

change go down go up



**G** Grammar focus – explanation & more practice of the present continuous on page 146

## Pronunciation

1 3.22 Read and listen to the words with the /ŋ/ sound.

travelling going England thank you

2 3.23 Listen to the chant and mark the stress.

He's going by bus.  
She's catching a plane.  
They're taking the car.  
I'm going by train.

3 Work in pairs. Practise saying the chant.

## Speaking

Read a questionnaire on transport on page 132 and answer the questions.



# Coming & Going

## Part 2

Vocabulary & Reading

Big numbers

Listening

The Mid-Levels Escalators

Grammar

Present simple & present continuous

Speaking

A travel dialogue

## Vocabulary and Reading

1 Look at the pairs of words. Which is the bigger number in each pair? Write the words in numbers.

- |                               |                              |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1 twenty                      | twenty-five                  |
| 2 a thousand                  | a hundred                    |
| 3 eight hundred               | a hundred and eighty         |
| 4 nine thousand               | ninety thousand              |
| 5 five thousand five hundred  | fifty-five thousand          |
| 6 one hundred and thirty-five | one thousand and thirty-five |

2 3.24 Listen and repeat the numbers in exercise 1.

**Language note:** we say *two hundred, two thousand*, not *two-hundreds, two-thousands*.

3 3.25 Read and listen to *Coming to Hong Kong* about an interesting form of transportation in Hong Kong. Match the numbers to the information.

- |          |                                                         |
|----------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 20     | a the total distance the escalators travel              |
| 2 25     | b the number of people who use the escalators every day |
| 3 135    | c the time it takes to go up all the escalators         |
| 4 800    | d the number of escalators                              |
| 5 55,000 | e the vertical distance the escalators go up            |

## Listening

1 3.26 Listen to a report about the Mid-Levels Escalators. Who is the commuter – the man or the woman?

2 Listen again and circle the correct option.

- She's at the *top / bottom* of the escalators.
- The escalators are going *up / down* now.
- Lots of people / Not many people* are using the escalators now.
- He uses the escalators *once / twice* a day.
- The man *likes / doesn't like* the escalators.

## Extend your vocabulary – come and go

In general *come* is used for a movement in the direction of the speaker. We often use it with words like *here* and *this*.

*Go* is used for a movement away from the speaker. We often use it with *there* and *that*.

*Please come in. The doctor can see you now.*

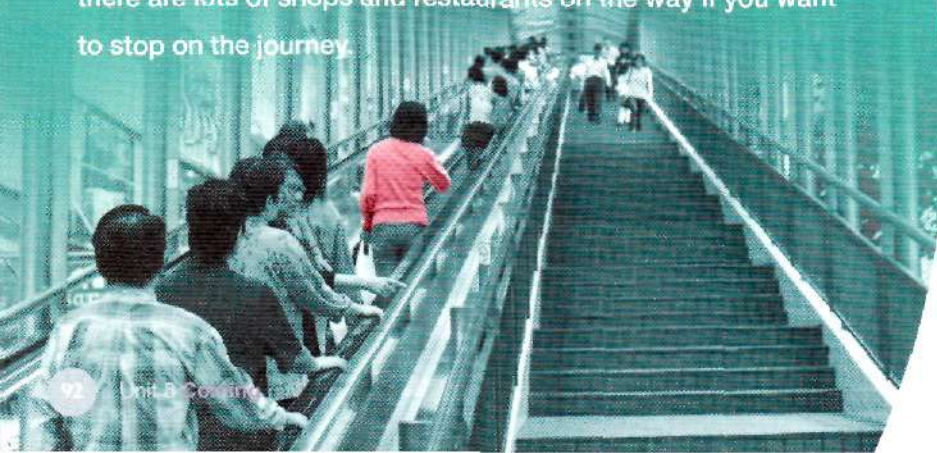
*Please go away! I'm trying to work.*

Complete the sentences with the correct form of *come* or *go*.

- \_\_\_\_\_ and look at this video – it's amazing!
- What time are you \_\_\_\_\_ home today? Can you finish this report first?
- We decided to \_\_\_\_\_ to Scotland for another holiday. We love it there.
- I want to \_\_\_\_\_ and live in a hot country.
- We're having a party on Saturday. Would you like to \_\_\_\_\_?

## Coming to Hong Kong

The Mid-Levels Escalator system is an important form of public transport for local people in Hong Kong. Each day about 55,000 commuters use the escalators. From 6am–10am the escalators go down. From 10am to midnight they go up. The system has 20 escalators, with a total travel distance of 800 metres. The vertical distance is 135 metres. It takes about 25 minutes to go right up the complete system, but there are lots of shops and restaurants on the way if you want to stop on the journey.





## Grammar

Every day thousands of people **use** these escalators to go to work.

Hundreds of people **are coming in**.

- use the present simple to talk about things which are generally true and habitual actions
- use the present continuous to describe what is happening now or around the present time

**1** Read three announcements you hear when you travel. Circle the correct verb form.


### Passenger announcements

This is a national bus service information message about bus services from Glasgow to London. On Mondays, Wednesdays and Fridays, the first bus **leaves / is leaving** Glasgow at 5.15am. It **is stopping / stops** at Birmingham and **arrives / is arriving** at London Victoria at 12.35.

Good afternoon ladies and gentlemen. This is flight BA 652 to Milan. If you **are travelling / travel** with babies or small children this morning, please come to the front of the queue.

This is a passenger information announcement. This weekend we **do / are doing** repairs on the blue line. No trains **are travelling / travel** between New Bridge station and South Central station. Passengers who normally **use / are using** this service should change onto the red line at King Street station.

**2**  3.27–3.29 Listen and check your answers.

**3**  3.30 Complete the dialogue with the correct form of the verb in brackets. Then listen and check your answers.

A: Excuse me. Can you help me?

B: Sure. Where \_\_\_\_\_ (you / go)?

A: I \_\_\_\_\_ (try) to go to West Harrow. It's on the Metropolitan line.

B: OK. Some of the trains on this platform \_\_\_\_\_ (go) there. 'Trains to Uxbridge \_\_\_\_\_ (stop) at West Harrow but trains to Watford \_\_\_\_\_ (not / stop) there. Look, a train \_\_\_\_\_ (come) now. OK, this is an Uxbridge train. This one \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to West Harrow.

**G** Grammar focus – explanation & more practice of the present simple and continuous on page 146

## Speaking

**1** Work in pairs. You are going to write a conversation between two people travelling. Choose **one** idea from each box below.

A a journalist  
a ticket inspector  
a police officer

B a tourist  
an old lady  
a businessman / woman

C on the Mid-Levels Escalator  
at an airport  
on the metro

D 'Where are you going?'  
'I'm using the phone.'  
'What are you looking at?'  
'You're not listening to me.'

**2** Write your conversation.

**3** Work with another pair and read your conversation to them.





## Part 3

Vocabulary &amp; Listening

Feelings

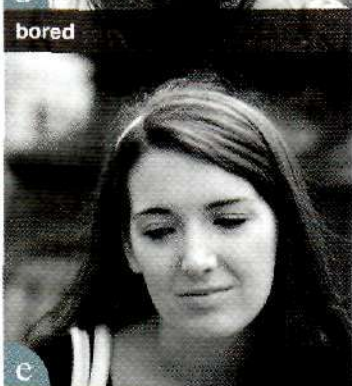
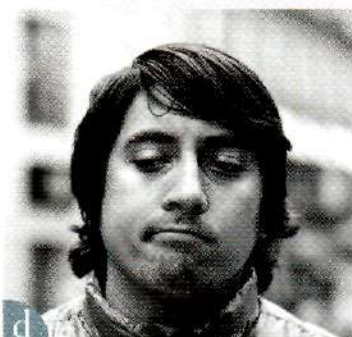
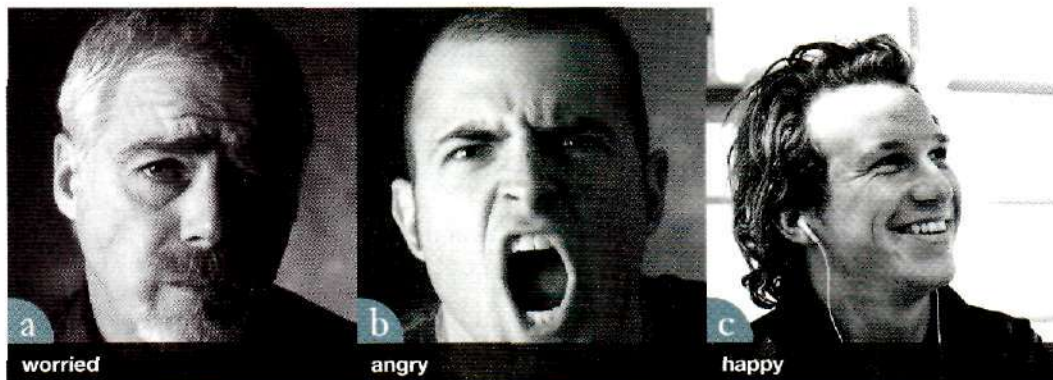
Reading

Culture shock!

Grammar

The comparative

Writing

An email about  
culture shock

## Vocabulary and Listening

1 3.31 Look at the pictures and the adjectives to describe how the people are feeling. Listen and repeat the words.

2 3.32–3.36 Listen to five conversations at an airport. Circle the correct adjective to describe the people's feelings.

- 1 He's *angry* / *bored*.
- 2 They're *happy* / *sad*.
- 3 They're *nervous* / *happy*.
- 4 They're *angry* / *bored*.
- 5 She's *worried* / *angry*.

**Language note:** use *get* + adjective to say we are beginning to feel that way.

*I get angry when people use their mobile phones in restaurants.*

3 Work in pairs. Choose three of these questions. Ask and answer them.

- Do you get nervous when you fly?
- Do you get angry easily in traffic?
- How do you avoid getting bored on long car or bus journeys?
- Do you get worried before you go on a long journey?

## Reading

1 What countries do you know? What countries would you like to visit? Tell a partner.

2 3.37 Read and listen to *Culture shock!* on page 95. According to the text, what is the best definition of *culture shock*?

- a feeling angry and sad in a new culture
- b the stages which visitors to a new culture experience
- c the final stage of a visit to a new culture

3 Read the text again. Match the pink words to these definitions.

- 1 someone from another country
- 2 gradually
- 3 a word or phrase
- 4 for all time in the future, permanently
- 5 a person who studies human customs and culture

4 Have you ever experienced *culture shock*? How did you feel?

5 Work in pairs. Look at the tips to avoid culture shock. Are they useful?



## Grammar

The people are *nicer*.

You are *happier*.

Things are *more expensive* than at home.

- use the comparative adjective + *than* to contrast two things

1 Write the comparative form of these adjectives.

- |             |           |
|-------------|-----------|
| 1 clean     | 4 happy   |
| 2 good      | 5 cheap   |
| 3 dangerous | 6 serious |

2 Complete the sentences with the comparatives in exercise 1.

We ate a very good meal last night.

The food here is much *better*!

- Public transport is great. I go everywhere by train, it's \_\_\_\_\_ here than in my country, only 80 cents!
- The people are \_\_\_\_\_ here. They don't smile.
- I didn't go out last night. They say it's \_\_\_\_\_ at night.
- The streets here are \_\_\_\_\_ than the streets at home. I think they clean them every day!
- I'm not very happy here. I was \_\_\_\_\_ at home.

3 Look at the sentences in exercise 2 again. Are the speakers in stage 1 (tourist) or stage 2 (shock) of culture shock?

**G Grammar focus** – explanation & more practice of the comparative on page 146

## Writing

Turn to page 132 and read two emails from someone living in a new country or city. Choose one of the emails and complete the sentences with your own ideas.

# Culture shock!

In 1954, the American **anthropologist**, Kalervo Oberg invented the **term** *Culture Shock*. He wanted to describe the common feelings of a visitor to a new country. Oberg said that there were four common stages. Many people experience these stages when they arrive in a new country.



## Stage one: tourist

This happens at the beginning of your trip. You feel nervous but happy about the new culture. Maybe you think the food is better, the people are nicer and the customs are more interesting than at home.

## Stage two: shock

In this stage, you begin to feel strange. You feel lonely and are sadder than before. You feel like a **foreigner**, and are sometimes angry with the new culture. Things are more expensive or more dangerous than at home.

## Stage three: adjustment

Culture shock doesn't last **forever**. Things get better, **little by little**. You are happier. You are learning to live in a *different* way.

## Stage four: acceptance

You are now living in the new culture and you aren't angry, or lonely or sad. Things aren't better or worse, only *different*.

### Some tips to avoid culture shock

- read about the country and culture before you go
- remember you are a guest and try not to offend local people
- be open to the new culture

In 1950 there were 25 million international visits by people to other countries. In 2005 there were 806 million international visits. People are going more places now than ever before.



# Unit 8 Coming & Going

## Part 4

Reading & Speaking

Changes in population

Reading

Why did you go?

Grammar

The infinitive of purpose

Pronunciation

Weak and strong forms

Vocabulary & Speaking

Travel objects

## Reading and Speaking

1 Read *Global Migration* and look at the map. Work in pairs. What does it show?

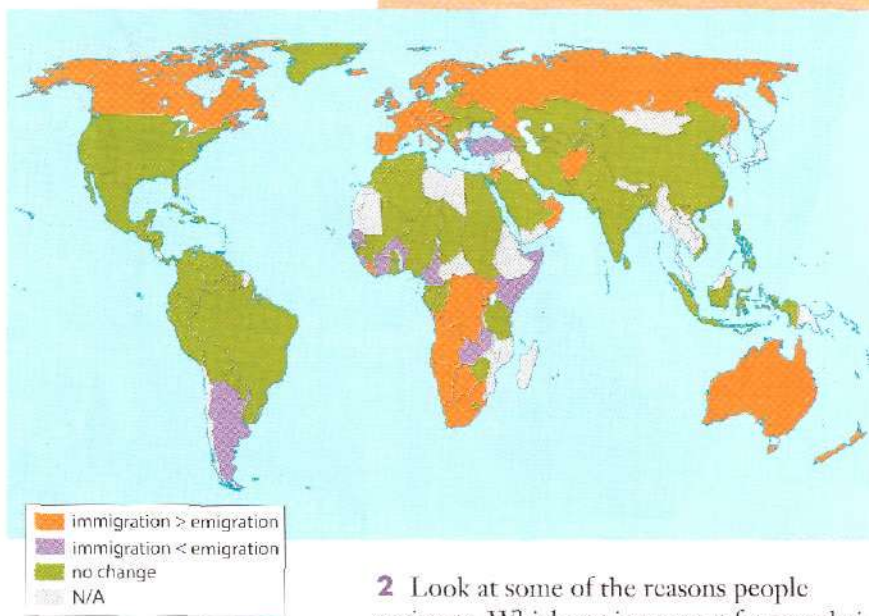
### Global Migration

Migration is the movement of people from one country to another.

An immigrant is a person who comes to live in a new country.

An emigrant is a person who goes to live in a different country.

The map below shows how the world's population is changing because of migration.



2 Look at some of the reasons people emigrate. Which are important for people in your country? Tell your partner.

- to earn more money
- to have a more relaxing life
- for political reasons
- to study
- to retire in a sunny place

People in my country go to other countries to study.

People in my country go to other countries to earn more money.

## Reading

1 Read *Why did you go?* on page 97 about four different people who emigrated. Why did they go? Choose their main reason from the list in Reading and Speaking exercise 2.

2 Underline the phrases in the text that helped you decide the answer.

3 Answer the questions. There may be more than one possible answer.

- 1 Which people plan to go back to their country?
- 2 Who came for economic reasons?
- 3 Who emigrated with other people?
- 4 Who has better job opportunities now?
- 5 Who came because of problems in their own country?

## Grammar

*I came here to study.*

- use the infinitive to say the reason for doing something

1 Read the text and complete the sentences with *to* or nothing (-).

### Frances and Robert, working couple

We    came to France to get away from the stress of life in the city. I    work from home and my wife flies to London once a month    see her boss. I    use a bike    go into the village and I started    tennis lessons    meet people. We never    go to the supermarket any more. We    go to the local market every week    buy all our food and    practise our French.

2 How many ways can you finish this sentence? Use *to* + infinitive to give your reasons.

I went to Britain to ...

**G Grammar focus** – explanation & more practice of the infinitive of purpose on page 146



# Why did you go?

Emigrants in different countries tell their reasons

## Ana Maria, economic migrant

We came here to get a better life for our children. At home I was a teacher, but here, well I'm a waitress. We get more money here and we can send money home to my mother. We're building a house in our country for when we go back.



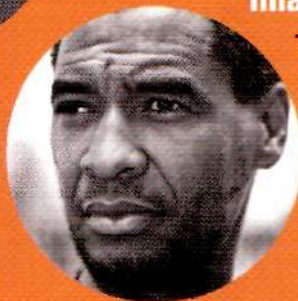
## Yan Chee, postgraduate student

Well, I came here to study. I'm studying for a doctorate at the university. I don't think I'll go back. There are more opportunities here than in my country.



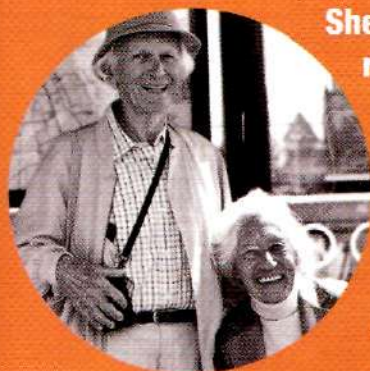
## Imamu, refugee

There are many problems in my country and it is very dangerous. You can't really say what you think. So I came here.



## Sheila and Michael, retired couple

We wanted to live somewhere with nice weather. So the day Michael retired we sold our house and came out here to play golf.



## Pronunciation

1 3.38 Listen and notice the different pronunciation of *to* in these two sentences.

I went to Britain. (weak)

A CD is something you listen to. (strong)

2 3.39 Listen and repeat the sentences.

Is the pronunciation of the underlined words strong or weak?

1 Have you lived abroad?

Yes, I have.

2 What did they come here for?

They came here for a better life.

3 Can they earn more money?

Yes, they can.

4 She wants to leave her country.

Where does she want to go to?

## Vocabulary and Speaking

1 3.40 Listen and repeat the words in the box. Then match them to the definitions. There are three words you do not need.

camera credit card passport  
phrase book suitcase toothbrush  
wallet / purse umbrella

- 1 you use *this* to put things in
- 2 you use *this* to travel to different countries
- 3 you use *this* to keep money in
- 4 you use *this* to clean your teeth
- 5 you use *this* to look for words in other languages

2 Make similar definitions for the other three words.

3 You are going to an English-speaking country for a year to learn English. Make a list of six to ten things you would take with you and think of a reason.

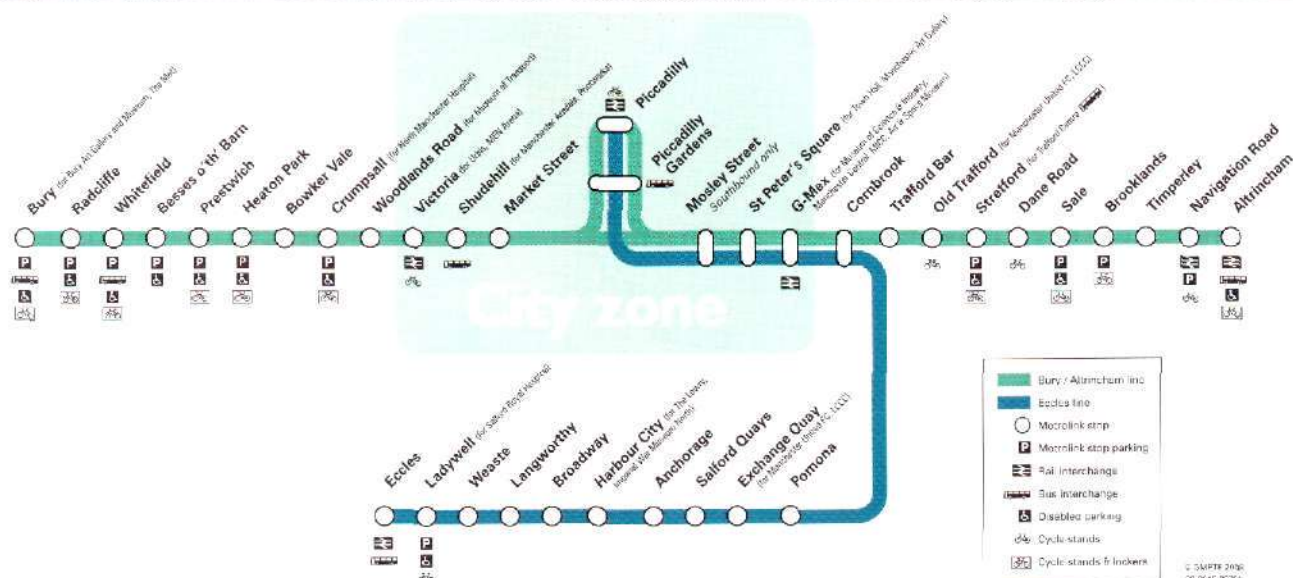
a camera – to take photos

a small suitcase – to put things in

4 Work in pairs and share your ideas. Give reasons.







## Warm up

Check you understand the words in **bold**. Then look at the Manchester Metro map and answer the questions.

- How many **lines** are there?
- How many **stops** are there between Bury and Heaton Park?
- What **line** do you take to get to Broadway?
- You are at Old Trafford. How many **changes** do you have to make to go to Ladywell station?
- You **get on** the Bury line at Whitefield and **get off** seven stops later. What stop are you at?

## Listening

**1** **3.41** Now listen to a conversation in London and answer the questions.

- What do the couple call the underground?
- At the end the woman says 'You're jealous'. Why do you think she says this?

**2** Listen again and put the events in the order you hear them.

- They are on the wrong train.
- They ask a man for directions to the tube.
- They ask a man for directions to the museum.
- They get off the train.
- They get on the train.

## Language focus: asking for directions

**1** Look at the sentences. Which ones are directions for outside the underground (O) and which are directions for inside the underground (I)?

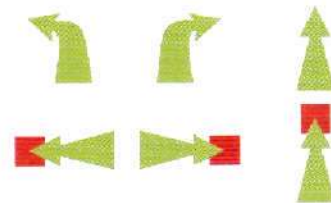
- Go two stops. \_\_\_\_\_
- Turn left. \_\_\_\_\_
- Go straight on. \_\_\_\_\_
- Change to the Central line. \_\_\_\_\_
- Turn right. \_\_\_\_\_
- Get off at Hyde Park Corner. \_\_\_\_\_

**2** Put the words in the correct order to make different ways to ask for directions.

- you get How to do the museum ?
- the museum get How we can to ?
- looking for We're the museum .
- to the museum We're trying get to .

## Useful phrases

- Turn left.
- Turn right.
- It's on the left.
- It's on the right.
- Go straight on.
- It's straight ahead.



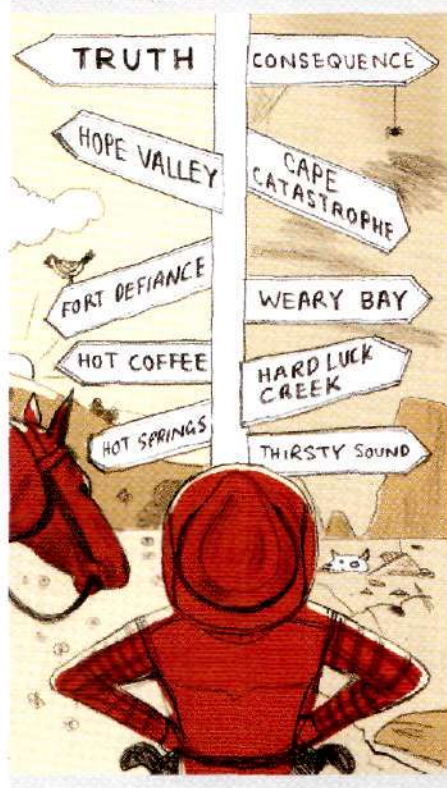
## Speaking

Work with a partner. Choose **one** of the tasks below.

**A** Use the Manchester Metro map. Choose a stop. Ask for and give directions to another stop.

**B** You are outside your school. Ask for and give directions to places near your school.





The place names of the English-speaking world give us fascinating linguistic information about history – and perhaps national character – too. In the US we find *Washington*, *Jamestown*, *Louisiana*, and thousands more places named after famous people. The modest British don't usually go in for this. There isn't an *Elizabethville* or *Charlesburg* in the UK.

All over the New World, places have the names of important people from history in a way that is very different from Britain. Australia has its *Victoria*, *Cooktown*, and *Gibson Desert*. Important places usually get the names of rulers, statesmen, explorers, soldiers, and sailors but, surprisingly, not the names of artists, writers, and composers. Even *Shakespeare* hardly ever appears in the English place names of the world.

Some place names are very imaginative. *Cape Catastrophe* and *Hard Luck Creek*. *Hope Valley* and *Fort Defiance*. *Weary Bay* and *Thirsty Sound*.

There's a place called *Hot Coffee* in Mississippi and one called *Difficult* in Tennessee. And in New Mexico, in 1950, the town of *Hot Springs* took the name of a popular radio show, and became *Truth and Consequences*.

### Glossary

**be named after somebody** (phrasal verb) – be called the same name as somebody

**composer** (noun) – someone who writes music, especially classical music

**fascinating** (adjective) – very interesting

**go in for something** (verb) – do something

**hardly ever** (adverb) – very rarely

**imaginative** (adjective) – showing new and different ideas

**statesman** (noun) – a political leader that people respect

### Warm up

- 1 Work in small groups. How many place names (of cities, towns etc) do you know in English? Make a list. You have two minutes.
- 2 Compare your list with other groups in the class. Who has the longest list?

### Reading

1 Read *English place names*. Are the sentences true (T) or false (F)?

- 1 Many places in the United States get their names from people.
- 2 Many places in England get their names from people.
- 3 Many places in the New World get their names from people.
- 4 Many places get their names from artists or writers.
- 5 Many places get their names from soldiers, sailors or politicians.

2 Read again and match:

- |                                                         |                                 |
|---------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1 a place name in the US named after a famous statesman | a <i>Charlesburg</i>            |
| 2 a place name that does not exist in England           | b <i>Difficult</i>              |
| 3 A name of an important person for Australia           | c <i>Gibson</i>                 |
| 4 Two very imaginative place names                      | d <i>Hot Coffee</i>             |
| 5 A name of a radio show                                | e <i>Truth and Consequences</i> |
|                                                         | f <i>Washington</i>             |

### Language

Find words in the place names in the text with the following meanings. The first letter is given. Use a dictionary to help you.

- 1 t \_\_\_\_\_ feeling that you want or need a drink
- 2 c \_\_\_\_\_ an event that is very bad, a disaster
- 3 d \_\_\_\_\_ the opposite of easy
- 4 w \_\_\_\_\_ a word that means very tired
- 5 v \_\_\_\_\_ an area between two mountains
- 6 c \_\_\_\_\_ a very small river

### Speaking

Choose one of the questions below and answer it with a partner.

- What are the strangest place names you know? Tell your partner. Make a list.
- Are there places in your country named after statesmen or soldiers? Are there any places named after artists?
- Invent some strange English place names. Use the following words to help you, and add other English words or names. Imagine what kind of place it is.

... -ville ... -town Cape ... Fort ... ... and ...



## Reading

1 Read Sebastian's report about transport in Poland.

Which paragraph mentions ...

- 1 transport in the capital city?
- 2 travelling to work?
- 3 travelling between cities?

**a** In Poland, most people go to work by bus or tram. Buses are very cheap and they are usually punctual. In most towns, people take the tram to go to work or to go shopping. Trams are mostly efficient but sometimes they are quite crowded.

**b** In Warsaw, many people are taking the metro these days. It is faster and more efficient than buses. Some people travel by car, but traffic is becoming heavier. It takes a long time to get to the city centre and it is difficult to find a parking place. A few people are also using bikes now but it is very dangerous in the city centre.

**c** Most people travel between cities by car or by train. Express trains are faster and safer than cars. It takes about three hours to get from Warsaw to Krakow by train. Our main problem is that in Poland there aren't many motorways. Also, there are lots of road works. It is a never-ending problem. However, at the moment we are building new motorways and the situation is getting better.

2 Match the types of transport 1–5 with the descriptions a–e from the report.

- |            |                                   |
|------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1 buses    | a dangerous in the city centre    |
| 2 trams    | b fast and safe                   |
| 3 bicycles | c cheap and punctual              |
| 4 trains   | d slow and difficult to park      |
| 5 cars     | e efficient but sometimes crowded |

3 What does Sebastian say is changing at the moment?

## Writing skills: spelling

1 Read the spelling rules.

- a words ending with one vowel + consonant: double the consonant before *er* or *ing*. *sit* – *sitting*
- b words ending with consonant + *e*: no *e* before *ing*. *make* – *making*
- c words ending with consonant + *y*: change *y* to *i* before *er*, change *y* to *ie* before *s*. *friendly* – *friendlier*

2 Find six spelling mistakes in Sebastian's report and correct them. Then match each mistake to one of the rules a–c.

3 Write the correct spellings.

- |                |              |
|----------------|--------------|
| use + ing      | <i>using</i> |
| 1 busy + er    | _____        |
| 2 travel + ing | _____        |
| 3 party + s    | _____        |
| 4 big + er     | _____        |
| 5 change + ing | _____        |

## Language focus: journey times

1 Complete the sentences from the report.

- 1 It \_\_\_\_\_ to \_\_\_\_\_ the city centre.
- 2 It \_\_\_\_\_ about three hours \_\_\_\_\_ Warsaw to Krakow \_\_\_\_\_.

2 Complete the sentences about your town or country.

- 1 It takes \_\_\_\_\_ to get from my house to the city centre by \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 It takes \_\_\_\_\_ to get from \_\_\_\_\_ to \_\_\_\_\_ by \_\_\_\_\_.

## Preparing to write

Work in pairs. Tell your partner about transport in your country. Use the useful phrases to help you.

### Writing a report

- Most / many / some / a few people travel by bus.
- People mostly / usually / often / sometimes take the metro.
- These days / Now / At the moment people are going by bike.
- A big problem / Our main problem is that traffic is heavy.
- Car accidents are a serious / never-ending problem.
- The situation is changing / getting better / getting worse.

## Writing

Write a report about transport in your country or in another country. Say how people usually travel, and what is changing at the moment. Write three paragraphs.

Paragraph 1: Travelling to work

Paragraph 2: Transport in the capital city

Paragraph 3: Travelling between cities



## Grammar

Circle the correct option.

Hi Jerry

I (1) *write* / *am writing* this postcard from Geneva! Yes, I arrived here yesterday (2) *to start* / *for start* my new job. The job is great and people are (3) *friendlier* / *much friendly* than in my last job. But everything is very different here. The weather is (4) *colder* / *more colder* than the weather at home and things are (5) *expensiver* / *more expensive* in the shops. The day (6) *starts* / *is starting* much earlier here, but public transport is (7) *better* / *more good* and people (8) *don't usually arrive* / *aren't usually arriving* late for work, like they do at home. People here (9) *drive* / *are driving* on the right, so that's a bit strange for me. Anyway, that's all for now – I (10) *go* / *am going* out now (11) *to get* / *getting* the bus to work.

Write soon!

Dan

## Vocabulary

1 Complete the sentences with the feelings.

angry nervous bored sad worried

- 1 I was very \_\_\_\_\_ when my dog died.
- 2 This is my first time on a plane. I'm feeling a bit \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 It makes me very \_\_\_\_\_ when buses arrive late.
- 4 I sometimes get \_\_\_\_\_ on long car journeys.
- 5 John wasn't on the bus. I'm \_\_\_\_\_ about him.

2 Circle the correct option.

A: How do you usually get to work?

B: I usually (1) *travel* / *take* the bus but last week it was very snowy and there were no buses, so I went (2) *on foot* / *on feet*. What about you?

A: I usually travel by (3) *the bus* / *bus* too, and I sometimes go (4) *by* / *in* car. But last week I decided to take (5) *metro* / *the metro*, because of the snow.

## Speaking and Writing

1 Work in pairs. Choose an object and write a sentence to say why you use it. Then read the sentence to the class. Can they guess the object?

*You use this to clean your teeth.*

2 Work in pairs. What do your friends and family members usually do at this time of day? What are they doing at the moment? Tell your partner.

*My mother usually works at home. I think she's cooking at the moment.*

## Understanding learning aims

1 Why are you studying English? Tick (✓) the phrases which are true for you. Then work in pairs and compare your answers.

- \* to pass an exam
- \* to communicate with people from other cultures
- \* to travel to an English-speaking country
- \* to get a good job
- \* to understand pop songs
- \* to have fun
- \* to live or study in an English-speaking country
- \* because English is an important international language
- \* because I enjoy learning languages
- \* for another reason

2 Read what one student wrote about learning English. Which learning aims from exercise 1 are true for her?

*I really enjoy my English classes. There are people from all over the world and I can learn so much from them. I want to learn more English to tell people about my country, and to learn about their countries.*

3 What are you doing to achieve your learning aims? Work in pairs and compare your answers.

**Understanding the aims of classroom activities can help you learn.**

4 Work in pairs and look again at unit 8. Choose the main aim for these activities.

- 1 Reading about *Pedal power* on page 90
  - a to learn about Vélip'
  - b to improve your reading
  - c to learn new words
- 2 Speaking on page 93
  - a to improve your grammar
  - b to speak more confidently
  - c to have fun
- 5 Work in pairs. What are the main aims of these activities?
  - Listening on page 92
  - Writing on page 95
  - Grammar on page 95
  - Pronunciation on page 97



## Part 1

Vocabulary & Speaking

Nature

Reading

One planet, one place!

Listening

A conversation about unusual species

Grammar

Present perfect

Speaking

Contact with nature

## Vocabulary and Speaking

1 Write the words in the box in the correct categories below.

bird fish flower insect lake  
plant zoo



2 3.42 Listen and check your answers.

3 Work in pairs. A: turn to page 127.  
B: turn to page 129. Describe the pictures to your partner.

## Reading

1 3.43 Read and listen to *One planet, one place!* What is EOL?

2 In your own words, explain the EOL project. Do you think it's a good idea?

## Listening

1 3.44 Listen to two people talking about unusual species. Are they ...

- a a teacher and a student?
- b two friends?
- c a reporter and a scientist?

2 Look at the pictures below. Then listen again and answer the questions.

- 1 Which two pictures do they talk about?
- 2 Where does the first animal come from?
- 3 Where does the second animal come from?
- 4 Has the person used the EOL website before?

## Glossary

**constantly** (adverb) – all the time

**look up** (verb) – find

**species** (noun) – a plant or animal group

# One planet, one place!

The Encyclopedia of Life is a project to create an online reference of every living species on earth. Scientists from all over the world are constantly putting information on the EOL website. There are texts, photographs, sounds, videos and maps. Anyone can look up information in the encyclopedia. Scientists hope the project will encourage people to learn more about the planet and protect nature.

The work has started ...



Tarsier



Fiddler crab



Okapi



Red lionfish



## Grammar

*Have you seen this before?  
I've been to Africa.*

- use the present perfect to talk about experiences in our lives
- we often use *ever* and *never* with the present perfect
- *ever* means in your life

**1** Put the words in the correct order to make sentences or questions from the listening.

- this ever Have seen you ?
- I No haven't .
- Africa you Have to been ?
- before I've seen animal never this .
- Encyclopedia website you Have Life used of before the ?

**2** Look at the past participles in the box. Decide if they are regular (R) or irregular (I). Write the infinitive.

camped climbed come flown  
gone planted ridden seen swum  
taken travelled visited

**3** Complete the text with the present perfect form of the verbs in brackets.

**Miguel Ángel Nieto Baños** is a wildlife photographer. He \_\_\_\_\_ (travel) all over the world and \_\_\_\_\_ (take) photographs of nature and animals. He \_\_\_\_\_ (visit) animal parks in Malaysia and Borneo and he \_\_\_\_\_ (camp) in Alaska to watch bears. He \_\_\_\_\_ (take) photos of active volcanoes in Hawaii and he \_\_\_\_\_ (go) by boat to film the hippopotamuses in Zimbabwe. But he \_\_\_\_\_ (not visit) the Galapagos Islands and he \_\_\_\_\_ (not see) giant turtles – that's the plan for his next trip.

**G Grammar focus** – explanation & more practice of the present perfect on page 148

## Speaking

**1** Read the questionnaire and write the questions.

### Nature and you

Have you ever ...

(climb) a mountain?	where?
(swim) in a lake?	where?
(see) a lion?	where?
(take) a photo of a wild animal?	what animal?
(ride) a horse?	where?
(go) fishing?	where?
(plant) a tree?	where?
(visit) a farm?	where?



**2** Work in pairs. Ask each other the questions from exercise 1.

A: *Have you ever climbed a mountain?*

B: *No, I haven't.*

A: *Have you ever swum in a lake?*

B: *Yes, I have.*

A: *Where?*

B: *In Austria.*

**3** Tell the rest of the class about the person you interviewed. Who has had the most contact with nature?





## Part 2

### Vocabulary & Speaking

#### Life events

#### Reading

#### Rites of passage

#### Grammar

#### The superlative

#### Speaking

#### A tradition in your country

## Vocabulary and Speaking

1 3.45 Match the two parts of the sentences. Then listen and check your answers.

- |               |                                  |
|---------------|----------------------------------|
| 1 I was       | a a baby when I was 38.          |
| 2 I left      | b home when I was 18.            |
| 3 I left      | c school when I was 16.          |
| 4 I graduated | d married when I was 33.         |
| 5 I started   | e born when my mother was 21.    |
| 6 I got       | f from work when I was 60.       |
| 7 I had       | g work when I was 23.            |
| 8 I retired   | h from university when I was 22. |

2 Look at the sentences in exercise 1 again. Make them true for people in your country. Compare your ideas with a partner.

*People in my country usually graduate from university when they are 25.*

3 Which two events do you think change our lives the most?

## Reading

1 Read the introduction to *Rites of passage*. Are there any rites of passage in your country for the events in Vocabulary and Speaking exercise 1?

2 3.46 Read and listen to the text and answer these questions.

- What is the rite of passage?
- How old is the person when they have the celebration?
- Is there a party?
- Who is at the rite of passage?
- What happens after the celebration?

3 Work in pairs. A: turn to page 127. B: turn to page 129. Read about another rite of passage.



## Rites of passage

**A rite of passage is a ceremony to mark an important time in our life. Some rites of passage are religious, others are social or family traditions.**

In Mongolia, the biggest and most important rite of passage for a child is the first haircut. The ceremony happens between the ages of two and six years old. Boys have the first haircut in an even year (when they are two, four or six years old) and girls have the first haircut in an odd year (when they are three or five years old). Children wear their best clothes for the event and invite family and close friends. After the haircut the mother keeps the hair and there is a big party.





## Grammar

*The most important rite of passage is the first haircut.*

*It is the happiest time of a girl's life.*

*The best thing about it is the party.*

- use *the* + superlative adjective to describe extremes

1 Circle the correct option in each sentence.

- 1 The *more expensive* / *most expensive* party in my country is the coming of age party.
- 2 The *happier* / *the happiest* day of my life was my *quinceañera*.
- 3 I was *the younger* / *The youngest* person in my family to have children.
- 4 When I retire I want to move to a *quieter* / *quietest* town.
- 5 In my country your 18<sup>th</sup> birthday is *more important* / *the most important* than your 21<sup>st</sup>.

2 Complete the text about unusual weddings with the correct form of the superlative.

### The most incredible wedding facts

- The world's \_\_\_\_\_ (expensive) wedding was a six-day celebration in France. It cost \$60 million.
- The world's \_\_\_\_\_ (long) wedding dress was created in Cyprus in 2007. It was 1,362 metres long.
- The \_\_\_\_\_ (old) man to get married was 102. He lived in Lithuania and his wife was 76.
- The world's \_\_\_\_\_ (heavy) wedding cake was in the United States. It weighed 7,500 kilos.

3 Which is the most surprising fact?

**G** Grammar focus – explanation & more practice of the superlative on page 148



## Speaking

1 You are going to give a presentation about a tradition or ceremony in your country or region. First, read the notes about an American ceremony.

### Name

*The name of the tradition or ceremony is ... the Baby Shower.*

### When & where

*It happens ... in the United States and now in some other countries. It normally happens a few weeks before the baby is born or a few weeks after the birth.*

### History

*It started as ... a small party for the female friends of the mother. The idea was to give the new family presents of baby clothes and equipment.*

**What happens & who is there**

*On this day ...*

*friends & family go to a party organised by close friends of the new parents. They play games (for example guessing the baby's weight) and give presents for the baby.*

**Is it changing?**

*It's becoming ...*

*more commercial. People are spending more money on the presents. It's becoming more popular in other countries too.*

2 Write notes about a tradition or ceremony you know well.

3 Give your presentation to your partner. Listen and ask questions. Use the useful phrases to help you.

### Useful phrases

- I'm going to tell you about a ceremony in my country.
- The name of the ceremony is ...
- It happens ...
- Do you have any questions?



## Part 3

Reading

Body styles

Vocabulary & Listening

Parts of the body

Grammar

Have got

Vocabulary

Parts of the face

Writing

Describing someone

## Reading

1 Look at the pictures below of body art. Do you know anyone with these?

2 Read *Body styles*. Match the paragraphs (1–4) to the headings (a–e) below. There is one heading you do not need.

- a The most interesting body art
- b Tattoos as fashion for some people
- c An ancient form of art
- d Why some people don't like tattoos
- e Why do people use body art?

3 What do you think of tattoos? Tell a partner.

## Glossary

**archaeologist** (noun) – someone who studies the ancient world

## Body styles

1 \_\_\_\_\_

Body paint and tattoos are two of the oldest forms of personal style. Archaeologists have found body art on Egyptian mummies and some historians think tattoos in Japan go back as far as 10,000 years. The English word *tattoo* comes from Tahiti, from the word *ta-tau*, meaning *to make a mark* and body painting is common for native people of the South Pacific and the Maori in New Zealand.

2 \_\_\_\_\_

Body paint can be part of a rite of passage, a religious symbol, or a personal decoration. Some people have got tattoos of names of people they love.

3 \_\_\_\_\_

But tattoos sometimes have negative associations. In Japan they are associated with The *Yakuza*, the Japanese mafia. And some people in other countries think of criminals, the military or people with no education when they see tattoos.

4 \_\_\_\_\_

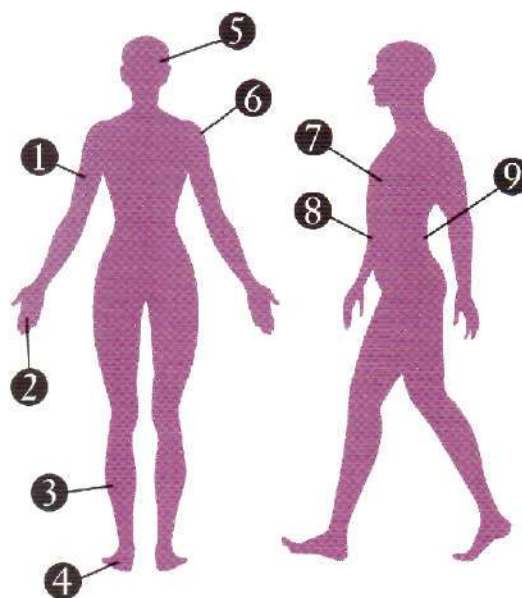
For some people now, tattoos are very fashionable. More and more young people are getting tattoos, especially in Europe and North America. Perhaps this is because of the number of actors, musicians and sports stars with tattoos.



## Vocabulary and Listening

1 Look at the pictures. Match the numbers to the different parts of the body.

- arm    — back    — chest
- foot    — hand    — head
- leg    — shoulder    — stomach



2 3.47 Listen and check your answers. Say the words.

3 3.48 Listen to five different people. Write the parts of the body they mention. What are they talking about?



## Grammar

Some people **have got** tattoos of names of people.

I've got one on my arm.

- use *have got* to talk about possession and family relationships. *Have got* means the same as *have*
- the negative is *haven't got*, and the question form is *Have ... got?*

**1** **3.49** Write down the different people and objects you hear. Then write true sentences about you. Use *have got* and *haven't got*.

**2** Rewrite the sentences in exercise 1 to make questions. Then work in pairs and ask each other the questions.

A: Have you got a car?

B: Yes, I have.

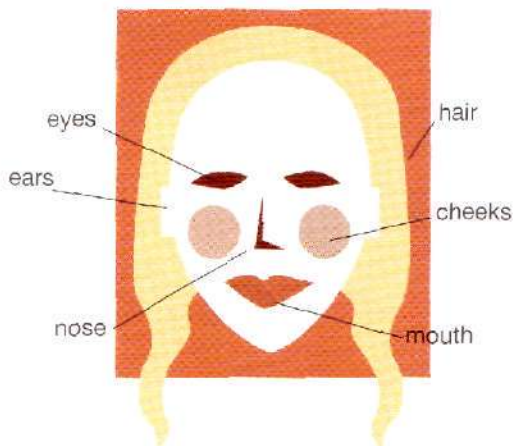
No, I haven't.

**G** **Grammar focus** – explanation & more practice of *have got* on page 148

## Vocabulary

**1** **3.50** Look at the picture of a face. Listen and repeat the words.

The face



**2** Write the words in brackets in the correct position to complete the descriptions.

- 1 He's tall and thin. He's got long \_\_\_\_\_ and very blue \_\_\_\_\_. (*eyes, hair*)
- 2 She's got \_\_\_\_\_ brown eyes and \_\_\_\_\_ hair. (*big, short*)
- 3 She's got black \_\_\_\_\_ and a thin \_\_\_\_\_. (*face, hair*)
- 4 He's tall and he's got big \_\_\_\_\_. He's got a tattoo on his \_\_\_\_\_. (*leg, ears*)
- 5 He's \_\_\_\_\_. He's got short black \_\_\_\_\_. (*hair, short*)
- 6 Her baby's beautiful. He's got lot of black \_\_\_\_\_ and lovely big, pink \_\_\_\_\_. (*cheeks, hair*)

## Writing

**1** Read the situation below.

A friend or family member is coming from another country to visit you. You can't meet them at the airport. You want your partner to meet them, but your partner doesn't know what they look like.

**2** Write a short letter describing your friend or family member. Use the language below and the vocabulary from this lesson to help you.

Hi ...

I'm writing to ask if you can help me. My \_\_\_\_\_ is coming to the airport and I can't be there. Can you meet him? He's \_\_\_\_\_ and he's got \_\_\_\_\_.

Thanks!

**3** Work in pairs and swap your letters. Read your partner's letter and write a short response.

Sure, I can meet your \_\_\_\_\_. No problem.

I'm sorry, I can't meet \_\_\_\_\_. I'm busy then. I've got (a party / work / a meeting).





## Part 4

### Vocabulary

#### Clothes

### Pronunciation

#### /ʃ/ & /s/

### Listening

#### The history of fashion

### Grammar

#### One & ones

## Vocabulary

1 Work in pairs. Can you name the pictures below? Use a dictionary to help you.

2 What's the difference between ...

- a shirt and a T-shirt?
- a skirt and a dress?
- a jumper and a jacket?
- a tie and a scarf?
- shorts and trousers?
- gloves and socks?

*A shirt is more formal than a T-shirt.*

3 Read the language note. Then work in pairs and describe other students in the class. Can your partner guess who it is?

**Language note:** we use the verb *wear* with clothes.

*She's **wearing** a red T-shirt and black trousers.*

*She usually **wears** a dress.*

## Pronunciation

1 3.51 Listen and repeat the words in the box.

scarf shirt shoe skirt sock

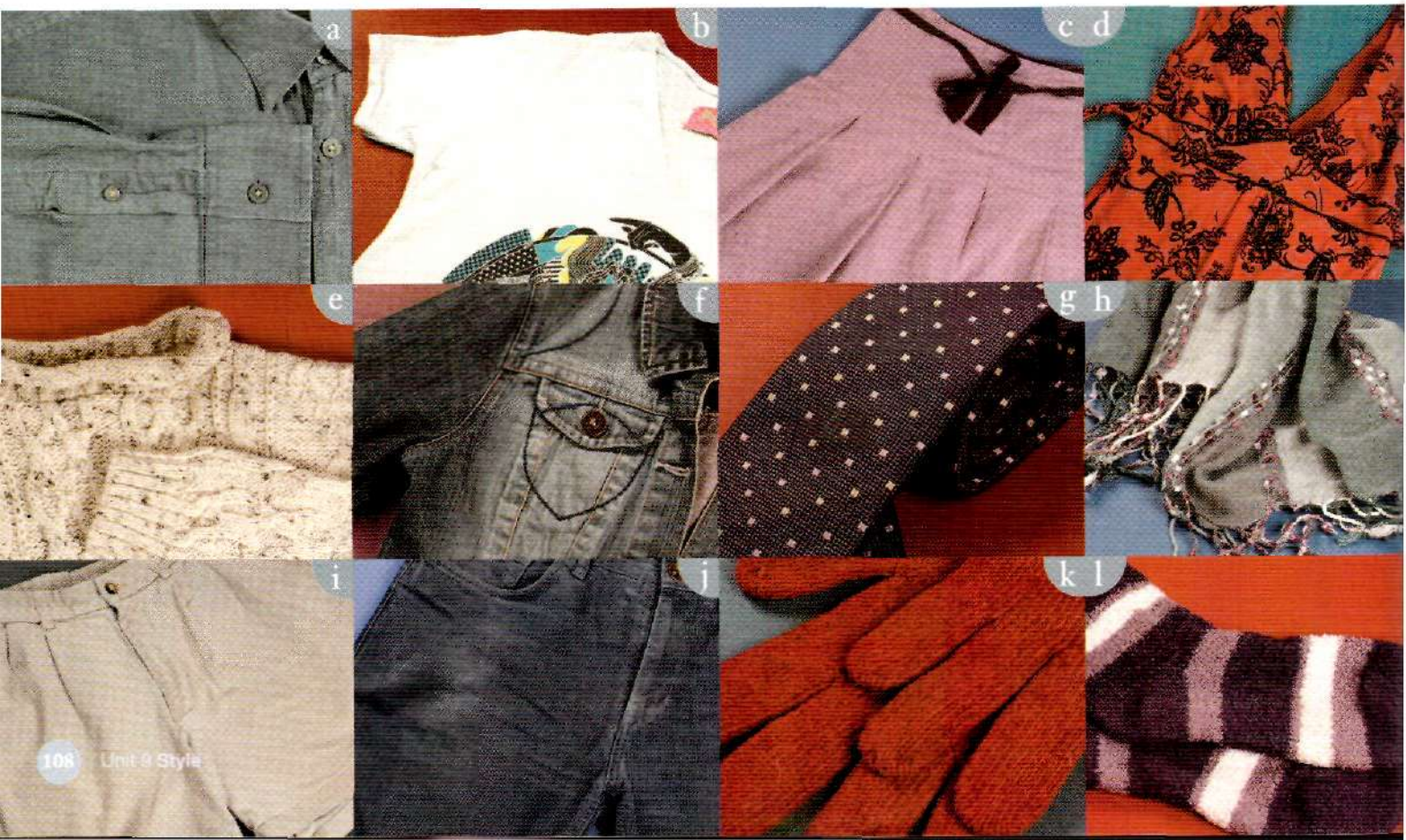
2 3.52 Listen to these words. Circle the first word you hear.

- |   |      |       |
|---|------|-------|
| 1 | see  | she   |
| 2 | so   | show  |
| 3 | sort | short |
| 4 | sock | shock |

3 Work in pairs. Say a word from exercise 2 to your partner. They point to the word.

4 3.53 Listen to the tongue twister. Can you say it?

Sam sells Sheena six short skirts.  
Shelly shows Susie seven silk shirts.







buttons



pockets



printed T-shirt



socks

## Listening

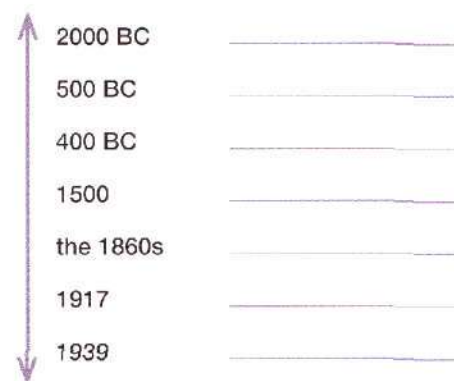
1 Work in pairs. Look at the clothing items on this page. Which one do you think is the oldest? The most modern?

*I think socks are the oldest.*

*Maybe the sports shoe is the most modern.*

**Language note:** *sports shoe* = *trainer* in British English and *sneaker* in American English.

2 3.54 Listen to a lecture about the history of fashion and write the clothing items in the correct position on the timeline.



3 Choose **two** clothing items. Listen again and make notes. Then compare with your partner. Check your notes with the audioscript on page 157.

4 In your opinion which item of clothing is the most useful? Why?

### Extend your vocabulary – talking about colours

We can use the words *light* or *dark* to describe colours in more detail.

*She is wearing a light green shirt.*

*He always wears dark blue trousers.*

Work with another student. Repeat Vocabulary exercise 3, but include *light* or *dark* in your descriptions.

## Grammar

*The first **ones** were for decoration.  
They used the first **one** to advertise the film  
The Wizard of Oz.*

- use *one* (singular) and *ones* (plural) to refer to something you said before
- we usually use *one* with an adjective, or with *this / that* in front of it

1 Replace the underlined words with an item of clothing from Listening exercise 1.

- 1 Don't wear white ones with black shoes.
- 2 I wore one to a wedding last year. It was a big blue one, with flowers on top.
- 3 These ones are especially for tennis, and those ones are for general sports.
- 4 I've got some old ones I wear in the garden. They're much more comfortable than the trousers I have to wear for work.

**Language note:** use *which* or *which one* to ask about something if there aren't many examples.

*Which **one** is your bag?* (there are only two or three bags)

*Which **would you like**, tea or coffee?* (there is only tea or coffee)

2 Work in pairs and ask each other about these things in your classroom.

- bag
- pens
- book
- jacket
- phone

A: *Which is Hamed's bag?*

B: *The brown one.*

A: *Which are Galina's books?*

B: *Those ones.*

**Grammar focus** – explanation & more practice of *one* and *ones* on page 148



sports shoe



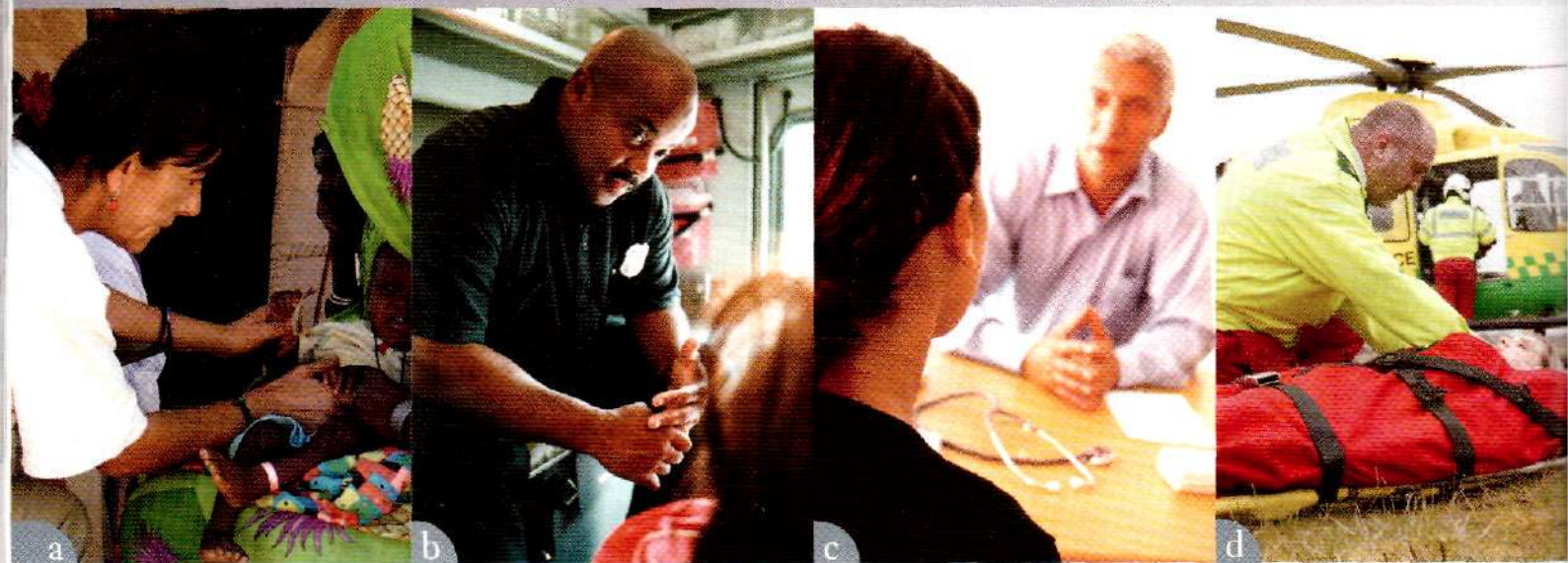
blue jeans



hat



## Unit 9 Function globally talking about health problems



### Warm up

Work in pairs and look at the four pictures of doctors. Take turns to describe the different pictures.

#### Useful language

- In the picture I can see ...
- There is / are ... in this picture.
- This is a picture of ...
- ... is richer / poorer / easier / more difficult than ...
- Maybe they are in Africa.
- He is a doctor perhaps.
- She is helping ...
- They are operating ...

### Listening

1 3.55-3.56 Listen to two conversations. Match each one to a picture. There are two pictures you do not need.

2 Listen again. Are these statements true (T) or false (F)?

Conversation 1: The woman fell down.

Her arm hurts.

She would like some water.

Conversation 2: Dr Hathaway's office is the second door on the left.

The man has a headache.

The doctor thinks the medicine is too strong.

### Language focus: talking about health problems

1 Who says it? Read the sentences and mark them *D* for doctor and *P* for patient.

What is the problem? \_\_\_\_

I don't feel well. \_\_\_\_

Where does it hurt? \_\_\_\_

Take this medicine. \_\_\_\_

I've got a headache. \_\_\_\_

You need to go to the hospital. \_\_\_\_

Can I see please? \_\_\_\_

Is it broken? \_\_\_\_

Drink lots of water. \_\_\_\_

2 Make two new sentences with the words in brackets.

I've got toothache (back, ear)

My finger hurts. (eye, feet)

I've got a sore arm. (leg, neck)

3 3.57 Listen and check your answers. Point to the part of the body you hear.

### Speaking

1 Work in pairs and make up a conversation. Use the example below to help you.

A: Greet the doctor.

B: Greet the patient. Ask what's wrong.

A: Tell the doctor what's wrong.

B: Ask to see.

A: Show the doctor. Ask a question about it.

B: Say no. Give an instruction.

2 Present your conversation to another pair.





Films and advertising are both huge businesses so it's not surprising to see them working together in more and more sophisticated ways. In the past, commercials were an aperitif, something you saw before the movie. Then, people only had to watch several minutes of advertising before the main film started. Today, there's no escape; the ads are also in the film. It's called *in-film advertising*.

*Brand props* (short for 'properties' – objects for a play or in a film) started in the 1940s. Joan Crawford didn't drink whiskey in *Mildred Pierce* (1948); she drank Jack Daniels whiskey. Today brand props are big business. We see the stars with a specific product, or we see a logo or an ad somewhere in the film.

For a long time, products in films appeared in the background. Today, companies want more; they want *brand fit* – in other words, the product is needed for the story in the film. Look at the cars and watches used by James Bond, and you'll see what I mean.



### Glossary

- ad** (noun) – advertisement  
**aperitif** (noun) – a drink that you have before a meal  
**background** (noun) – the part of the film that is behind the main characters or action  
**big business** (noun) – something that makes a lot of money  
**brand** (noun) – product that has its own name and is made by one company  
 e.g. Nike, Coca-Cola® **commercial** (noun) – advertisement  
**escape** (noun) – getting away  
**huge** (adjective) – very big  
**logo** (noun) – a symbol that represents a company or organisation  
**movie-goer** (noun) – a person who goes to the movies  
**sophisticated** (adjective) – complicated and advanced

## Warm up

Look at the definition of a brand. Can you think of two brands for each of the following things?

drinks perfume watches cars

## Reading

1 Read *English advertising goes to the movies* and match the phrases and definitions.

- |                       |                                                                              |
|-----------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 in-film advertising | a objects in a movie which have a particular brand and are part of the story |
| 2 brand props         | b advertising that happens in a film                                         |
| 3 brand fit           | c objects in a movie which have a particular brand                           |

2 Read the text again. Complete the sentences with a, b or c.

- Film and advertising ...
  - work separately.
  - work together.
  - are in competition.
- In the past commercials came ...
  - before the film.
  - after the film.
  - in the middle of the film.
- Today, advertising is ...
  - separate from the film.
  - more important than the film.
  - in the film.

- In-film advertising started ...
  - in the first half of the 20<sup>th</sup> century.
  - in the second half of the 20<sup>th</sup> century.
  - this century.
- The way products appear in films now is ...
  - the same as in the past.
  - different from the past.

## Language focus

Look at the words in the box. Which words are connected to advertising (A)? Which words are connected to cinema (C)?

films	C	ads	product
advertising		props	logo
commercial		brand	background
movie-goer		star	story
main film			

## Speaking

Work in pairs and discuss the questions.

- Have you ever noticed *in-film advertising*? Can you think of an example?
- Do you think in-film advertising is a bad thing?
- What type of products do you see in advertisements at the cinema in your country?



# Unit 9 Writing a speech

1 Read Giovanna's speech to introduce a visitor to her school. Who is the visitor and why is she important?



Ladies and gentlemen, I would like to introduce a very important visitor. She is one of the most famous scientists in the world. She is also the oldest living person to have a Nobel Prize. Her name is Rita Levi Montalcini. Rita was born in Turin, in Italy. She studied medicine at the Turin Medical School, and later specialised in neurology. In 1986 she won the Nobel Prize for Medicine with an American colleague, Stanley Cohen. Rita has taught in a number of universities all over the world, and has won many prizes. She has made many important discoveries about nerve cells in the brain. Her work has contributed to the treatment of several diseases, including multiple sclerosis and cancer. We are very pleased that Rita can come and talk to us today about her life and work. Ladies and gentlemen, please welcome Rita Levi Montalcini.

2 Complete the table with facts about Rita's life.

Profession	
Background and education	
Prizes	
Work and achievements	

## Writing skills: using paragraphs

Paragraphs are groups of sentences which are used to separate ideas in a text.

Divide Giovanna's speech into four paragraphs with these headings.

- why the person is important
- life and background
- achievements
- welcome

## Language focus: superlative structures

1 Complete the sentences from the text.

She is \_\_\_\_\_ in the world.

She is also \_\_\_\_\_ a Nobel Prize.

2 Complete the sentences with words and phrases in the box.

athletes environmentalists to run explorers  
politicians to become to reach to win

- Wangari Maathai is one of the most important \_\_\_\_\_ in the world. She is the first woman from Africa \_\_\_\_\_ the Nobel Peace Prize for her work with planting trees in Kenya.
- Ranulph Fiennes is one of the most famous \_\_\_\_\_. He was the first man \_\_\_\_\_ both the North and South Poles.
- Barack Obama is one of the most important \_\_\_\_\_ in the world. He was the first black American \_\_\_\_\_ President of the US.
- Thelma Pitt-Turner is one of the most amazing \_\_\_\_\_ in the world. She is one of the oldest people \_\_\_\_\_ a marathon. She was eighty-two at the time.

## Preparing to write

Make notes about an important person from your country or another country. Use the paragraph headings in the Writing skills section to help you.

## Making a speech

- Ladies and gentlemen, I would like to introduce ...
- I am very pleased to welcome ...
- We are very pleased that he / she can come and talk to us about ...
- Please welcome ...

## Writing

- Write a speech to introduce the person to your school. Use your notes and the useful phrases to help you. Write four paragraphs using the headings from the Writing skills section.
- Work in pairs. Exchange your speech with your partner. Check your partner has used paragraphs.
- Read your speech to other people in the class.



## Grammar

Correct one mistake in each sentence.

- 1 Have you ever go to China?
- 2 Mount Everest is highest mountain in the world.
- 3 A: Can I see that jumper, please?  
B: Which?
- 4 I don't have flown in an aeroplane.
- 5 These are the more expensive trousers in the shop.
- 6 A: Which shoes do you want to try on?  
B: The black, please.
- 7 Do you got a car?
- 8 Have you ever took photos in a zoo?
- 9 A: Which is your house?  
B: It's that next to the supermarket.
- 10 I haven't a dress for the wedding.

## Vocabulary

1 Match words 1–6 to words a–f.

- |          |          |
|----------|----------|
| 1 head   | a park   |
| 2 hands  | b zoo    |
| 3 feet   | c gloves |
| 4 tree   | d river  |
| 5 fish   | e socks  |
| 6 animal | f hat    |

2 Complete the sentences with one or more words.

In my country we (1) \_\_\_\_\_ school at the age of 5, and (2) \_\_\_\_\_ school at the age of 18. We normally (3) \_\_\_\_\_ from university at about 21 and (4) \_\_\_\_\_ work. We usually (5) \_\_\_\_\_ at the age of 65.

## Speaking and Writing

1 Work in pairs. Sit back-to-back with another pair and try to describe the other pair's appearance (hair, eyes, clothes). Then turn round and check. Were you right?

2 Write four sentences about your experiences using the present perfect. One must be false. Work in small groups. Take it in turns to read out your sentences and try to guess which one is false.

I've ...  
I haven't ...  
I've been to ...  
I've never been to ...

## Dictionary skills 2: learning about words

A learner's dictionary can give you information about the class of a word (eg noun, adjective, preposition etc). It can also give you other information about the grammar of a word.

Sometimes a word can have two word classes. For example, *plant* can be a noun and a verb.

plant 1 (*noun*)

1 [C] a living thing that grows in soil and has leaves and roots: a *strawberry plant*

plant 2 (*verb*)

1 to put trees, plants, or seeds in soil so that they will grow there: I've *planted* a small apple tree in the garden.

1 Look up these words in a dictionary. Write two word classes and an example sentence for each word.

fish 1 \_\_\_\_\_  
2 \_\_\_\_\_  
giant 1 \_\_\_\_\_  
2 \_\_\_\_\_

A dictionary can tell you if a noun is countable (C), uncountable (U) or both (C/U). For example the dictionary entry above tells us that *plant* is countable (C).

2 Work in pairs. Write C, U, or U/C next to the words. Then check your answers in a dictionary.

art	_____	painting	_____
information	_____	project	_____
nature	_____	species	_____

A learner's dictionary can also tell you the past participle form of a verb.

swim (*verb*) (past tense *swam*; past participle *swum*)

3 Work in pairs. Write the past participles of these verbs. Then check your answers in a dictionary.

swim	<i>swum</i>	fall	_____
break	_____	make	_____
drink	_____	sleep	_____
eat	_____		



## Part 1

Vocabulary & Speaking

Free time activities

Reading

Masters of fun

Grammar

The -ing form

## Vocabulary and Speaking

**1** You are going on a long plane or train journey. Which **two** things below do you take to pass the time?



**2** Complete the sentences with a suitable verb.

- 1 You can d \_\_\_\_\_ puzzles / sports / nothing
- 2 You can r \_\_\_\_\_ books / comics / newspapers
- 3 You can p \_\_\_\_\_ video games / board games / cards

**3** Which of the activities in exercise 2 do you do in your free time? Complete the sentences and tell a partner.

In my free time I often ...

In my free time I sometimes ...

In my free time I never ...

## Reading

**1** **3.58** Read and listen to *Masters of fun* on page 115 and match the pictures to the paragraphs.

**2** Read the text again and choose the correct answer.

- 1 Manga books are popular ...
  - a with adults in America.
  - b with young people around the world.
  - c with people on buses and trains.
- 2 You read a Manga book ...
  - a differently from an English book.
  - b from left to right.
  - c more quickly than an English book.
- 3 Sudoku is a popular game ...
  - a in America.
  - b for people on their way to work.
  - c only in Japan.
- 4 Playing video games is ...
  - a popular with adults.
  - b popular in Japan.
  - c an American invention.
- 5 Dr Kawashima's *Brain Training* is ...
  - a a game for children.
  - b a game for adults.
  - c a puzzle.

**3** Have you ever seen, read or played any of these things?

## Extend your vocabulary – fun and funny

We use **fun** when we have a good time or enjoy ourselves.

*I had fun.*

We use **funny** if something (a person, film, joke, etc) actually makes us laugh.

*It's a very funny film.*

Choose the correct word.

- 1 My brother's always telling jokes. He's really **fun** / **funny**.
- 2 That party last week was a lot of **fun** / **funny**.
- 3 How was your holiday? Did you have **fun** / **funny**?
- 4 Did you see that new comedy programme on TV last night? I didn't think it was very **fun** / **funny**.
- 5 We did a new activity in English class today. It was good **fun** / **funny**.





## Grammar

*Doing Sudoku is a popular activity.  
Many people love reading Manga.*

- use the *-ing* form of the verb to describe an activity
- we use the *-ing* form as the subject at the start of a sentence or after verbs like, love, hate, etc

**1** Make sentences with the prompts.  
Do you agree?

- 1 Do / Sudoku / is very difficult.
- 2 Play / video games / is for young people.
- 3 Do / puzzles / helps you stay young.
- 4 Read / comics / is boring.
- 5 Have / fun / is the most important thing in life.

**2** Make three true sentences and one false sentence about the free time activities in Vocabulary exercise 2. Use the verbs below and the *-ing* form.

love      like      don't mind      don't like      hate

*I love doing puzzles.*

*I don't mind reading newspapers.*

**3** Work in pairs. Read your sentences to your partner. Can they guess the false sentence?

**G Grammar focus** – explanation & more practice of the *-ing* form on page 150

# Masters of fun

**Manga, Sudoku, Brain Age or the popular Playstation®, it seems that everywhere you look, the Japanese are very good at helping people have fun. We take a closer look ...**

**1** Manga is the name of a style of Japanese comics. They began in the late 18<sup>th</sup> Century. Many young people around the world love reading Manga but in Japan they are popular with adults and young people. One interesting thing about Manga comics is that – even in English – you read them from right to left, and not from left to right and you start at the back of the book.

**2** Sudoku is a kind of number puzzle. It was very popular in Japan in the 1990s but it became famous around the world in 2005. You can find Sudoku puzzles now in newspapers almost everywhere. Doing Sudoku is a popular activity for people on the bus or train to work.

**3** Playing video games is almost a national pastime in Japan. So it's no surprise that the Playstation and Nintendo® video game companies are Japanese. One of the most recent popular games for adults is Dr. Kawashima's Brain Training™. This is a video game with a series of puzzles. Kawashima says that doing these puzzles is good for your health; it makes your brain younger and your thinking time quicker.



## Part 2

Reading & Speaking

Malta fact file

Vocabulary

Places in a city

Listening

Reasons for visiting

Malta


Grammar

Going to

Speaking

Planning a weekend for someone

## Reading and Speaking

**1**  3.59 Look at the pictures. Read and listen to the *Malta fact file*. Find the answers to these questions.

- 1 Where is Malta?
- 2 What languages do they speak there?
- 3 How many people live there?
- 4 What is the weather usually like?

**2** Work in pairs and ask each other the questions.

- Do you know anything else about Malta?
- What do you think are popular activities for people who visit this place?

## Vocabulary

**1** Look at the pictures of Malta on page 117. Match the words in the box to the pictures.


beach castle church  
monument museum restaurant

**2** Read the definitions of different places in a city. Then make similar definitions for the words below. Use a dictionary to help you.

a shop – you can buy things here  
a market – you can sell things here  
a theatre – you can see plays and operas here

- a hotel
- a sports stadium
- an airport
- an art gallery

## Listening

**1**  3.60–3.66 Listen to seven people who are going to visit Malta. Circle the best summary for each speaker.

Speaker 1: *cultural visit / fun in the sun*

Speaker 2: *tourism / business*

Speaker 3: *activities for adults*  
*/ activities for children*

Speaker 4: *water sports / cultural visit*

Speaker 5: *getting married in Malta*  
*/ getting married in London*

Speaker 6: *making a film / making a TV show*

Speaker 7: *learning English / teaching English*

**2** Listen again and make notes for each speaker. Then compare your answers in pairs. What are each person's plans?

**3** Look at the pictures again. What would you like to do in Malta?

## Malta fact file



**Name:** Malta

**Location:** Southern Europe, island in the Mediterranean Sea

**Area:** 316 sq km

**Population:** 403,000

**Languages:** Maltese, English

**Climate:** Mediterranean, rainy winters, hot summers

**Economy:** Electronics, pharmaceuticals and tourism







## Grammar

*I'm going to visit the old bits of Malta.  
We're going to have a conference here next spring.*

*Are you going to visit the castle?*

- use *be + going to + infinitive* to describe personal plans and intentions for the future
- with the verb *go*, we usually say *be + going to*

**1** 3.67 Complete the sentences from Listening exercise 1 with the *going to* form of the verbs in brackets. Then listen and check your answers.

- 1 We \_\_\_\_\_ the water park. (*visit*)
- 2 We \_\_\_\_\_ in them. (*swim*)
- 3 We \_\_\_\_\_ there. (*get married*)
- 4 We \_\_\_\_\_ a big party at a restaurant. (*have*)
- 5 We \_\_\_\_\_ some scenes in Malta. (*film*)
- 6 I \_\_\_\_\_ English there this summer. (*learn*)

**2** Change these sentences so they are true for you.

- I'm not going to study English tonight.
- I'm going on a trip this weekend.
- I'm not going to see my family today.
- I'm going to have a holiday soon.
- I'm going to a restaurant this evening.

**3** Work in pairs. Compare your sentences in exercise 2 and ask about your partner's plans and intentions.

A: *I'm not going to study English tonight.*

B: *No? What are you going to do?*

A: *I'm going to watch TV.*

**G** Grammar focus – explanation & more practice of *going to* on page 150



## Speaking

**1** Work in pairs. These people are going to come to your city for a weekend. They want you to plan a weekend for them. Choose **one** of the groups of visitors.

A group of people with a lot of money

A group of people with *not* very much money

A family with small children

A group of people who love sports

A group of people who love culture

**2** Prepare a list of things for them to do. Think about:

- accommodation (*they're going to stay at ...*)
- food (*they're going to eat ...*)
- things to do in the day (*they're going to visit ...*)
- nightlife (*at night they're going to see ...*)
- transport (*they're going to travel around the city by ...*)

**3** Tell another pair about your plans for the visitors.

*They're going to stay in the Palace Hotel because they have a lot of money.*





## Part 3

Vocabulary

Sports

Reading

A ball can change the world

Grammar

Present perfect & past simple

Speaking

Asking about sport

## Vocabulary

1 Complete the verb phrases below with *-ing*, *-ball* or nothing (-).

	basket	
foot	play	volley
golf		tennis
swimm	go	ski
cycl		run

2 3.68 Match the verb phrases in exercise 1 to the pictures. Then listen and check your answers. Say the verbs.

3 Work in pairs and ask each other the questions.

- Which sports do you like?
- Which sports do you do?
- Which sports do you watch on TV?

## Reading

1 You are going to read about a special sports competition. Check you understand the words in the box.

annual homeless objective  
tournament

2 3.69 Read and listen to *A ball can change the world* on page 119. Find these numbers in the text. What do they mean in the text?

19

The number of countries in the first Homeless World Cup.

1	35	4	2003
2	73	5	100,000
3	144		

3 Work in pairs. Ask and answer these questions.

- Are there many homeless people in your town or city?
- Are there projects to help them?
- Do you think the Homeless World Cup is a good idea? Can a ball *change the world*?

## Extend your vocabulary

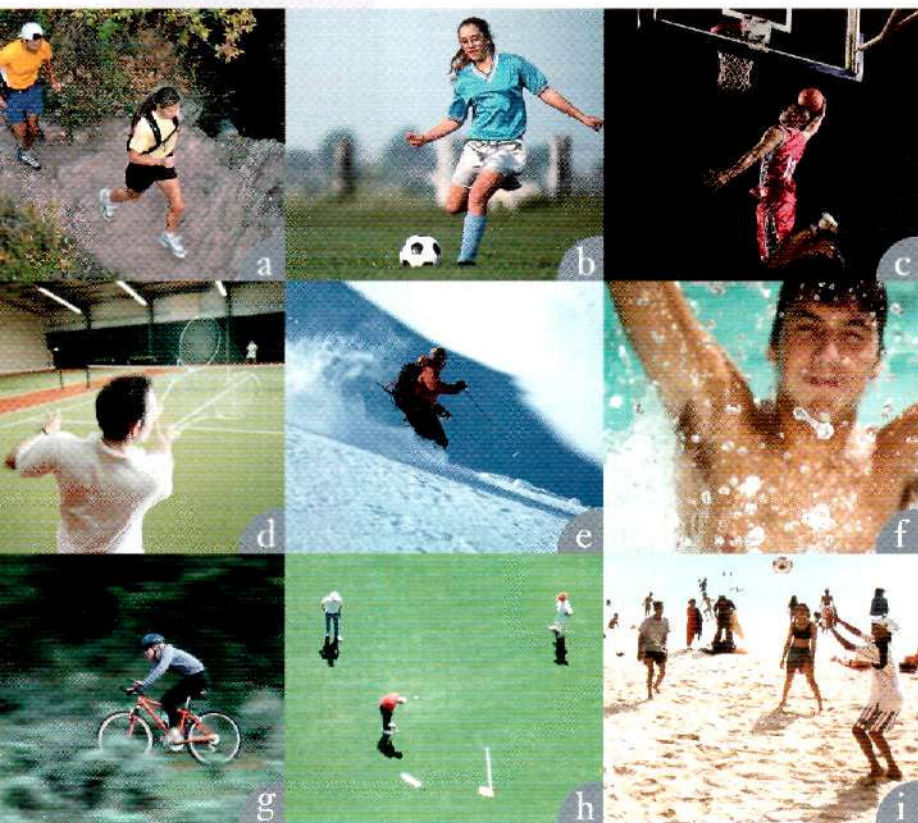
We use the suffix *-less* to mean *without*, eg *homeless*

We use the suffix *-ful* to mean *with lots of*, eg *beautiful* (notice the spelling)

Some words can use both suffixes, eg *colourless*, *colourful*

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.

- The injection I had was \_\_\_\_\_. It didn't hurt at all! (*pain*)
- Be \_\_\_\_\_! That machine was very expensive. (*care*)
- Our new cat is really \_\_\_\_\_. It loves being with the children. (*play*)
- You need to check your work more. You've made some \_\_\_\_\_ mistakes. (*care*)
- Oh what a \_\_\_\_\_ dress. Where did you buy it? (*beauty*)





## Grammar

35% *have found* a job.

The first Homeless World Cup was in Graz in 2003.

- use the present perfect when we don't know or say when the event happened
- use the past simple when we say when the event happened and with time expressions such as *in 2007, four years ago, when I was 16, last week*

### 1 Circle the correct verb form.

#### The story of David Duke

Six years ago, David Duke *was / has been* homeless and he *didn't have / hasn't had* a job. He *has heard / heard* about the Homeless World Cup in 2004 and *has decided / decided* to join. He *has played / played* for Scotland in 2004. Since then, lots of good things *have happened / happened*. He *has gone / went* back to school. He *found / has found* a home. His team *has won / won* the Homeless World Cup in 2007.



### 2 Make questions with the present perfect.

- 1 you / ever / do / a sports class?
- 2 you / ever / do / any winter sports?
- 3 you / ever / see / an important sporting event live?
- 4 you / ever / play / a team sport?
- 5 you / ever / be / in a sporting competition?

**G Grammar focus** – explanation & more practice of the present perfect and past simple on page 150

## Speaking

Work in pairs. Turn to page 133 and ask each other questions about sport.

# A ball can change the world

There are one billion homeless people in our world today.

We're not all bad people. The only difference between us is that you have a home and we don't.  
**Dermot Haverly, Captain, Ireland**

The Homeless World Cup is an annual, international football tournament. The objective is to end homelessness. The first Homeless World Cup was in the city of Graz, Austria in 2003. There were 19 countries. More than 144 homeless men and women played. Austria won the tournament.

The players say that the event changes their lives. For example, since the 2006 Homeless World Cup in Cape Town ...

39%

have gone back to school

35%

have found a job

44%

have found a home

92%

of players have a new motivation for life

73%

have changed their lives for the better

In addition, the organisers of the Homeless World Cup say that the event can change the way we see homeless people. More than 100,000 people watched the 2007 tournament in Copenhagen, Denmark.

Playing in the Homeless World Cup has been a fantastic experience for all our team. We have all worked very hard and have learnt so much.  
**Ricardo Arma, Captain, Italy**

**HOMELESS WORLD CUP**





## Part 4

Pronunciation

Word bingo

Speaking & Reading

Kim's game

Listening

Popular language games

Vocabulary

Playing games

Speaking

Explaining a game

## Pronunciation

1 3.70 Listen and repeat the pairs of words. Can you hear the difference?

- |    |       |        |
|----|-------|--------|
| 1  | cat   | it     |
| 2  | car   | call   |
| 3  | met   | meat   |
| 4  | pig   | big    |
| 5  | open  | opened |
| 6  | hi    | eye    |
| 7  | teen  | ten    |
| 8  | could | good   |
| 9  | they  | day    |
| 10 | get   | got    |

2 Choose six words from exercise 1 and put them in the grid below.


3 3.71 Listen to the words. When you hear a word in your box, circle it. When you have marked all your words, call out *Bingo!*

## Speaking and Reading

- 1 Work in pairs and discuss the questions.
- The pronunciation activity above was a game. Do you like playing games?
  - Did you have a favourite game as a child? What was it? How do you play it?
  - Have you played any other games that help you to learn English? Which games?

2 3.72 Read and listen to *Kim's game* on page 121. Have you heard of this game? How do you think people play it?

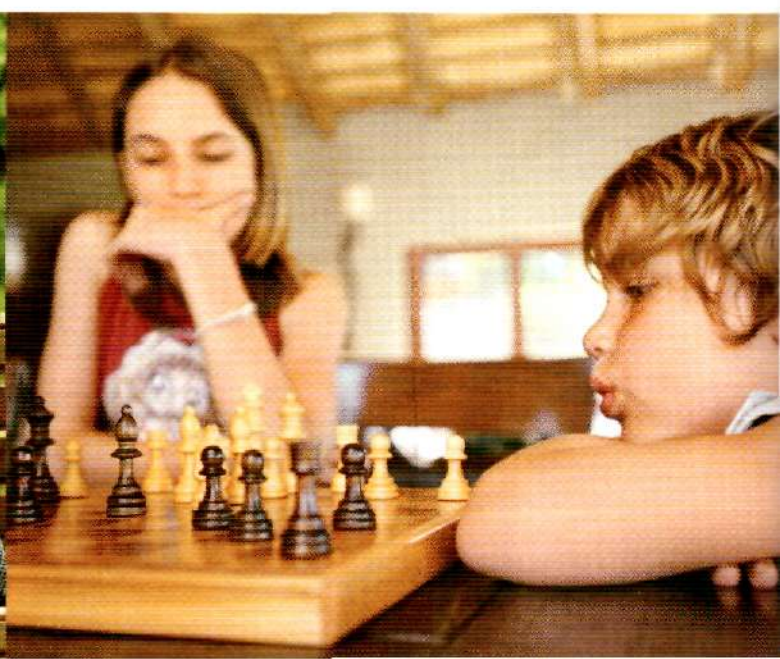
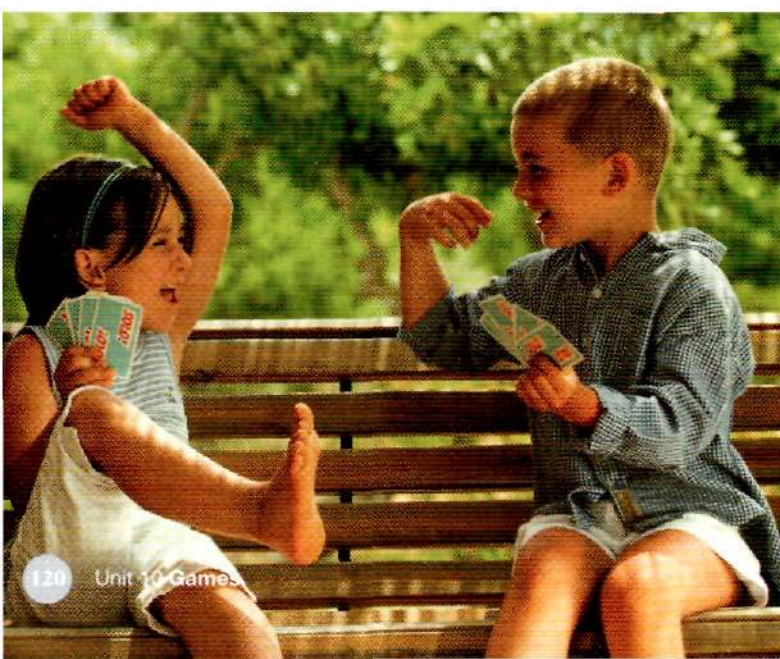
## Listening

1 3.73–3.75 Listen to people explaining three popular language games. Match the games 1–3 to the types of explanation a–c.

- |   |                               |
|---|-------------------------------|
| 1 | Categories                    |
| 2 | Kim's Game                    |
| 3 | Twenty Questions              |
| a | the description of the game   |
| b | a conversation about a game   |
| c | the instructions for the game |

2 Choose one of the games. Listen again and make some notes about the rules.

3 Work in pairs. Explain the rules of the game, but use your own words.



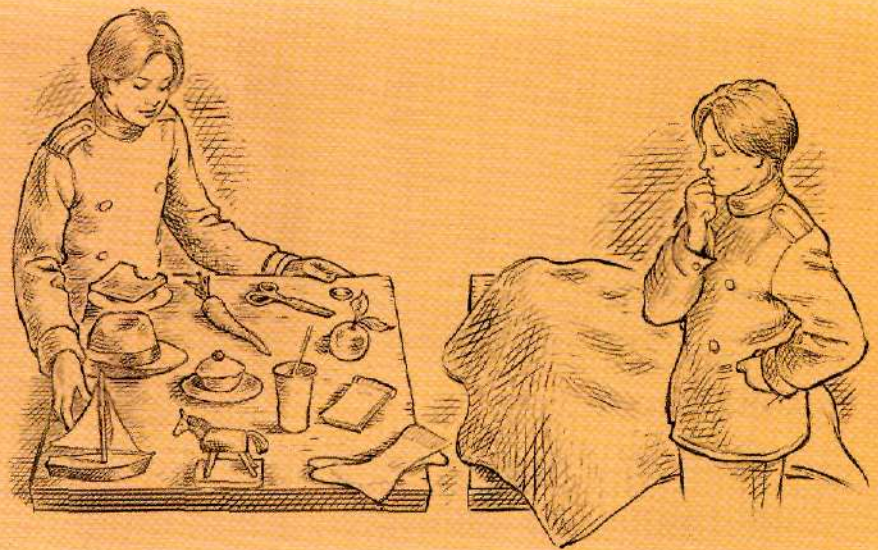


# Kim's Game

Kim's Game originally comes from a book called *Kim* by the English writer Rudyard Kipling. In the book, the main character Kim plays this game to train his powers of observation and become a spy for the British government in India and Asia.

The game became very popular with the American Boy Scouts organisation and is also a popular game for language learners.

It's easy to play Kim's game ...



## Vocabulary

1 Complete the expressions with a word from the box. Use a dictionary to help you. There is one word you do not need.

cheating game lose my points  
turn wins

- Every time I play with him I \_\_\_\_\_. He's better than me.
- It's \_\_\_\_\_ turn.
- No \_\_\_\_\_! You can't look at the cards.
- The objective is to get a hundred \_\_\_\_\_.
- The person with the most points \_\_\_\_\_ the game.
- Whose \_\_\_\_\_ is it?

2 3.76 Listen and check your answers.

## Speaking

1 Work in small groups. Choose one of the games from the listening or another game you know that helps you to learn English. Play the game.

2 When you finish, tell the class.

## Useful phrases

- The game we chose was ...
- We liked it / didn't like it.
- We thought it was fun.
- We thought it was OK.
- It helps you to learn English because ...

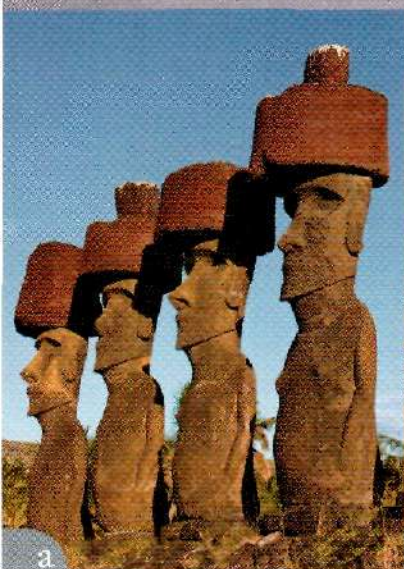
Nobody really knows what the world's oldest game is. Some people say the Chinese board game of Go is the oldest in the world (more than 4,000 years old).



Rudyard Kipling (1865–1936) was the first English writer to receive the Nobel Prize for Literature. Kipling was born in Mumbai, and many of his books are about India. His most famous books are *The Jungle Book*, *Just So Stories* and *Kim*.



# Unit 10 Function globally making suggestions



## Warm up

Work in pairs. Look at the pictures and answer the questions.

- 1 Do you know any of these sights? What do you know about them?
- 2 Have you visited any of these sights?
- 3 Which sights would you like to see?
- 4 What other world famous sights can you think of?
- 5 What are the most famous sights in your country?

## Listening

1 3.77–3.79 Listen to three conversations between tour guides and tourists. Match each one to a picture. There is one picture you do not need.

2 Listen again and answer the questions.

Conversation 1: Is it their first visit to Egypt?

What time does the sight open?

Conversation 2: Where is the Kremlin?

Are there long queues to see it?

Conversation 3: Has the woman visited Turkey before?

What are they going to do first?

## Language focus: making suggestions

1 3.80 Read and listen to how people make and respond to suggestions from the listening.

Asking for a suggestion	What do you suggest? What would you like to see?
Making suggestions	Let's see the pyramids. Why don't we go to your hotel first? We can go and see the sights.
Responding (affirmative)	Oh, yes. Good idea.
Responding (negative)	I don't know. Oh, no thanks.

2 Make suggestions with the prompts.

- go to the cinema
- go and have a coffee
- get something to eat
- take a taxi to class
- walk home together
- go shopping

3 Work in pairs. A: make a suggestion from the list above. B: respond. Then swap roles and repeat.

## Speaking

Work in pairs and choose **one** of the tasks below.

**A** Look at the audioscript on page 157 and choose one of the conversations. Change some details and practise it.

**B** A: you are a visitor to B's country. B: you want to show the visitor some nice sights. Make suggestions. The visitor responds.



# Global English Language play

by David Crystal



- a** People love to play games with their language – we start doing this as children. We like to change or break the rules; pronunciation, spelling, grammar, and vocabulary can all be changed for fun.
- b** You can make up sentences which play with English pronunciation: these are called tongue-twisters. A famous tongue-twister is *She sells sea-shells on the sea shore*. Many people can say this slowly – but at normal conversational speed?
- c** Most games play with the written language. You can try something really difficult, such as writing a story without using the letter 'e'. Ernest Wright once wrote a 50,000-word novel called *Gadsby* with no 'e' in it. It's harder than you think, because you can't use some very common words in English, such as *the*, or regular past tenses (in *-ed*).
- d** Another idea is to write a story with only one vowel: *The three elderly gentlemen were clever ...* Or try writing a play in which every word begins with the same letter. A possible title: *Maybe Macbeth made Mrs Macbeth mad?*



## Glossary

**common** (adjective) – seen or occurring often

**elderly** (adjective) – polite way to say *old* to describe somebody

**harder** (adjective) – more difficult

**make up** (verb) – invent, create

**sea-shell** (noun) – the hard outer part of a sea creature

**tongue-twister** (noun) – a sentence that is difficult to say, often because the words all start with the same sound

**vowel** (noun) – any of the five letters a, e, i, o, u

## Warm up

Work in groups. Make a word chain: the last letter of one word is the first letter of the next word.

*game – easy – yes – student ...*

## Reading

**1** Read the sentences 1–4. Now read the text and match the sentences to a paragraph.

- Writing without a common letter \_\_\_\_
- Writing using one letter a lot \_\_\_\_
- Difficult sentences to pronounce \_\_\_\_
- Language games for children \_\_\_\_

**2** Read the text again. Are the sentences true (T) or false (F)?

- Language games are too difficult for children.
- You can play with different parts of language.
- A tongue-twister is easy to say quickly.
- The novel *Gadsby* uses all the letters of the alphabet.
- The letter *e* is in many common words in English.
- Another idea in the article is to start each word in a story with the same vowel.

## Language focus

Put the words in the box into the table of word families.

children gentlemen grammar letter novel  
play pronunciation story vocabulary  
vowel word

people	language	spelling	writing
children			

## Speaking

Work in pairs and discuss the questions.

- What language games are popular in your country?
- What games do children play when they are bored in the car?
- Teach your partner a tongue-twister in your language or try saying this tongue-twister in English: *Red lorry, yellow lorry*.



## Reading

1 Read Silma's email to a friend. What is Silma's job? Does she like it? Why / why not?

Dear Sadia

How are you? I haven't heard from you for ages. I hope you had a good holiday last summer.

I'm well and quiet busy at the moment. I'm doing a voluntary job with a small privat company three days a week. I helping the administrator. She really freindly, and help me when I have problems with my english. I have attend two training course and Im going to attend another soon

I've applied for other jobs but unfortunately I haven't been lucky yet. I'm going to have another interview next week for a job with the Council. I really hope I can find a paid job soon.

Last december I went home for visit my family. I spend three weeks there. it was really great to see everone.

How about you? I hope your family are well. Please write soon!

Best wishes,

Silma

2 Answer the questions.

- 1 What is Silma doing at the moment?
- 2 What has she done?
- 3 What is she going to do soon?
- 4 What did she do in December?

## Writing skills: checking your work

1 Silma did not check her email for mistakes before sending it. Look at the second and fourth paragraphs.

Can you find ...

- five spelling mistakes?
- seven grammar mistakes?
- three punctuation mistakes?
- three mistakes with capital letters?

2 Work in pairs. Answer these questions.

- Look at your last piece of homework. What kind of mistakes did you make?
- Do you check your writing? How do you check it?

## Language focus: hopes

1 Complete the sentences from the email.

- 1 I hope \_\_\_\_\_ a good holiday last summer.
- 2 I really hope \_\_\_\_\_ a job soon.
- 3 I hope you and your family \_\_\_\_\_ well.

2 Do the sentences express hopes for the past, present or future?

3 Complete these sentences with an appropriate verb.

- 1 I hope the party \_\_\_\_\_ fun last Friday.
- 2 I hope you \_\_\_\_\_ the match tomorrow.
- 3 I really hope you \_\_\_\_\_ your new job at the moment.
- 4 I'm sorry your father has been ill. I hope he \_\_\_\_\_ better soon.
- 5 I hope you \_\_\_\_\_ angry with me last night.
- 6 I'm glad you're having English lessons now. I hope your English \_\_\_\_\_.

## Preparing to write

1 Make notes for an email to a friend.

Think about ...

- your present activities.
- your past activities.
- your future plans.

2 Work in pairs. Ask your partner about their present and past activities and future plans.

## A personal email

- How are you? I haven't heard from you for ages.
- Sorry I haven't written for so long.
- I'm quite / very / really busy / well / tired at the moment.
- I hope everything is OK.
- Please write soon.

## Writing

1 Write your email. Write about your news and hopes. Use the useful phrases to help you.

2 Check your writing. Look for grammar, spelling and punctuation mistakes.

3 Work in pairs. Exchange emails with your partner. Read their email and underline any mistakes. Then return the email to your partner.

4 Make final corrections to your email.



## Grammar

Complete the conversation with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

A: (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (you / go) anywhere special on holiday?

B: Yes, I (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (stay) with my brother in Paris. He (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (take) me to his favourite restaurants, and we (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (visit) some art galleries because we both like (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (look) at paintings. (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (you / go) to France?

A: Yes, I (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (go) there five years ago on holiday, but I (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (not / go) to Paris. I really want to go back to France – (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (speak) French is good fun and I love (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (eat) French food!

## Vocabulary

1 Match the words in the box to the verbs below.

cards   comics   fun   golf   newspapers   a party  
puzzles   running   sports   swimming

play \_\_\_\_\_  
do \_\_\_\_\_  
read \_\_\_\_\_  
go \_\_\_\_\_  
have \_\_\_\_\_

2 Complete the sentences.

- 1 *Manga* is a kind of \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 The opposite of win is \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 It's easy to \_\_\_\_\_ Kim's game.
- 4 If you are the next person to play a board game, it's your \_\_\_\_\_.

## Speaking

Work small groups. Take it in turns to choose a topic. Try to talk about the topic for one minute.

plans for tomorrow	sports	your free time
games	past experiences	a funny film
a good book	plans for next year	things to do in your town/city

## Using graded readers

1 Answer the questions. Then work in pairs and compare your answers.

- 1 What do you usually read in your language (newspapers, magazines, books etc)?
- 2 How often do you read?
- 3 Where do you usually read?
- 4 Why do you read?

Graded readers are short books for learners of English written with simpler vocabulary and grammar. They can help you ...

- \* increase your vocabulary.
- \* read more quickly and confidently.
- \* improve your general English level.

2 The words in the box describe different types of readers. Check the meanings in a dictionary. Which of these types of books do you prefer reading?

adventure   detective stories   ghost stories   history  
human interest   romance   science fiction  
short stories   thrillers   travel

3 Read two extracts from Macmillan graded readers. What types of book are they from? Which do you prefer?

Mary looked behind her, but there was no-one coming. She took a deep breath and slowly pushed back the door. Then she went through the door and shut it behind her. She was breathing fast with excitement and delight. She was standing inside the secret garden! It was a lovely, mysterious-looking place. (*The Secret Garden*)

a

In 2004, at the age of eighty-five, Nelson Mandela retired. He had spent his life fighting for freedom and equality. It had been a long and difficult journey, but he had won. He also had the love and respect of millions. Now it was time to rest. (*Nelson Mandela*)

b

4 Look at these titles of graded readers. What types of book do you think they are? Would you like to read any of them? Work with a partner and compare your ideas.

- Casino Royale
- I, Robot
- Robinson Crusoe
- Romeo and Juliet



# Communication activities: Student A

## Unit 1, Vocabulary (page 12)

1 Dictate these email and website addresses to your partner.

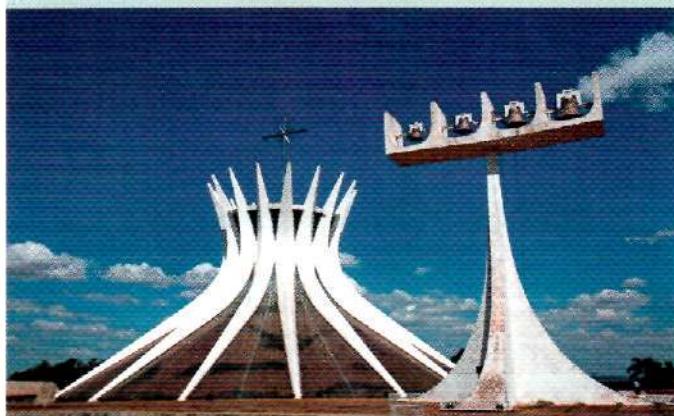
- markturner@hotmail.com
- www.englishnow.com
- www.londontourist.co.uk/maps

2 Write down the email and website addresses your partner says.

## Unit 2, Grammar (page 21)

1 Read the text below about a created capital.

Brasília (capital from 1960) is the capital of Brazil. It's in the centre of the country, about 900 km from Rio de Janeiro and 870 km from São Paulo. The population is about 2 million. Brasília is a modern city. It has lots of green spaces and not a lot of pollution.



2 Find out about your partner's city. Ask and answer the questions from Grammar exercise 1 on page 21.

## Unit 2, Vocabulary and Listening (page 24)

1 Write down the dates your partner says.

2 Dictate these dates to your partner.

27<sup>th</sup> May    12<sup>th</sup> March    10<sup>th</sup> June    23<sup>rd</sup> October

3 Check your answers together.

## Unit 4, Speaking (page 43)

1 Work in small groups and create an unusual hotel. Use the ideas in the box, the pictures and the text on page 43 to help you. Make notes of where it is, the prices and the facilities.

in an old hospital    in a plane    in a zoo



2 Work with students from group B and exchange information. Find a hotel you like.



## Unit 4, Speaking (page 47)

Look at the picture. What do you see? Describe your breakfast table to your partner and ask them questions about theirs. How many differences can you find?



A: On my breakfast table I have ... Do you?

B: Yes, I do. / No, I don't. And what about ...?

A: I don't have any ...

## Unit 7, Speaking (page 85)

1 Look at the table below and ask your partner questions to complete it.

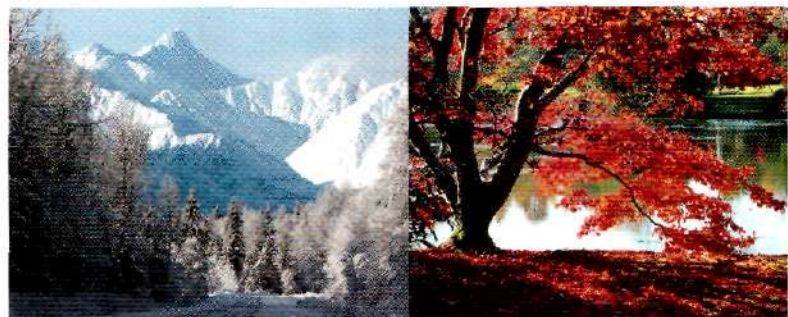
A: Where did you go?

B: I went ...

	Student A	Student B
where / go?	Music festival	
how / travel?	By train	
who / go with?	Three friends from work	
have / good time?	It was OK. Rained a lot	
do / there?	Saw lots of bands	

2 Answer your partner's questions about your day out.

## Unit 9, Vocabulary and Speaking (page 102)



1 You and your partner both have a picture of a mountain scene and a park scene. The pictures are similar but there are some differences. Describe your mountain scene to your partner and answer their questions. Use the useful language below to help you.

### Useful language

- There's a ... / There are some ...
- In the centre / On the right / On the left ...
- In the distance ...
- Is there a ...? / Are there any ...?
- What colour are ...?
- How big is ...?

2 Listen while your partner describes their park scene. What differences can you hear? Ask questions to check before you look at their picture.

## Unit 9, Reading (page 104)

In El Salvador and other Central American countries, a girl has a party when she is 15 years old. It is called the *quinceañera*. They say it is the happiest time of a girl's life. It can also be the most expensive event for the girl's family. The girl's dress is an important part of the party. The most common colour is white or pink. In some *quinceañera* parties the girl starts with a white dress and then changes into a pink dress. After the party she is considered to be a woman.

1 Read the text and answer the questions in Reading exercise 2 on page 104.

2 Work in pairs and tell your partner about the rite of passage.

3 Do you have any special celebrations like these in your country?



# Communication activities: Student B

## Unit 1, Vocabulary (page 12)

1 Write down the email and website addresses your partner says.

2 Dictate these email and website addresses to your partner.

- jillpotter@yahoo.es
- xray.man@relemail.net
- www.dictionary.com/english

## Unit 2, Grammar (page 21)

1 Read the text below about a created capital.

Canberra (capital from 1927) is the capital of Australia. It is in the south-east of the country, about 250 km from Sydney. The population of Canberra is small. It is only about 350,000. It's a modern city and it has nice weather.



2 Find out about your partner's city. Ask and answer the questions from Grammar exercise 1 on page 21.

## Unit 2, Vocabulary and Listening (page 24)

1 Dictate these dates to your partner.

13<sup>th</sup> October    31<sup>st</sup> August    25<sup>th</sup> May    26<sup>th</sup> July

2 Write down the dates your partner says.

3 Check your answers together.

## Unit 4, Speaking (page 43)

1 Work in small groups and create an unusual hotel. Use the ideas in the box, the pictures and the text on page 43 to help you. Make notes of where it is, the prices and the facilities.

in a school

on the beach

on a bus



2 Work with students from group A and exchange information. Find a hotel you like.



## Unit 4, Speaking (page 47)

Look at the picture. What do you see? Describe your breakfast table to your partner and ask them questions about theirs. How many differences can you find?



B: On my breakfast table I have ... Do you?  
A: Yes, I do. / No, I don't. And what about ...?  
B: I don't have any ...

## Unit 7, Speaking (page 85)

1 Look at the table below and answer your partner's questions about your day out.

A: Where did you go?  
B: I went to my aunt's wedding.

	Student A	Student B
where / go?		Aunt's wedding
how / travel?		By car
who / go with?		My family
have / good time?		It was great! Weather was fantastic
do / there?		Danced and ate

2 Ask your partner questions to complete the table.

## Unit 9, Vocabulary and Speaking (page 102)



1 You and your partner both have a picture of a mountain scene and a park scene. The pictures are similar but there are some differences. Listen while your partner describes their mountain scene. What differences can you hear? Ask questions to check before you look at their picture. Use the useful language below to help you.

### Useful language

- There's a ... / There are some ...
- In the centre / On the right / On the left ...
- In the distance ...
- Is there a ...? / Are there any ...?
- What colour are ...?
- How big is ...?

2 Describe your park scene to your partner and answer their questions.

## Unit 9, Reading (page 104)

In Britain, Australia and New Zealand an important time for a young person is their 'coming of age'. In the past this was on their 21<sup>st</sup> birthday but now it is more common on their 18<sup>th</sup> birthday. The best thing about it is the party. The person usually invites their friends or family, and they bring more expensive gifts than usual. This is the time when a young person becomes an adult. They can vote, drink alcohol or join the army.

1 Read the text and answer the questions in Reading exercise 2 on page 104.

2 Work in pairs and tell your partner about the rite of passage.

3 Do you have any special celebrations like these in your country?



# Additional material

## Unit 1, Vocabulary and Speaking (page 8)

**1** Say a number from one to nine. Your partner says the number before and the number after.

A: six

B: five, seven

**2** Say a letter from B to Y. Your partner says the letter before and the letter after.

A: d

B: c, e

## Unit 6, Vocabulary (page 66)

### Teenagers' top five career choices

Gallup asked 1,000 13-17 year olds to choose three jobs they would like to do. Here are the five most popular.

- 1 Teacher
- 2 Doctor
- 3 Lawyer
- 4 Sports coach
- 5 Scientist

## Unit 6, Grammar (page 71)

# Great teachers from history



**Isaac Newton**

was born in England in 1642. He was a teacher and scientist.

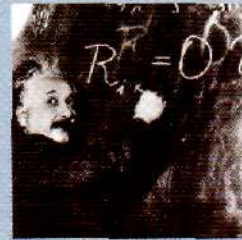


**Galileo Galilei** was

born in Italy in 1564. He was a teacher and astronomer.

**Albert Einstein**

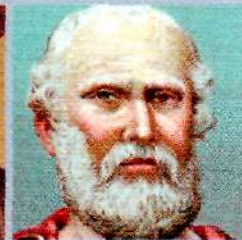
was born in Germany in 1879. He was a teacher and scientist.



**Maria**

**Montessori**

was born in Italy in 1870. She was a teacher and philosopher.



**Aristotle and Plato** were from Greece.

Aristotle was born in 384 BC and Plato in 427 BC. They were two of the most famous philosophers of ancient Greece.

**Confucius** was

born in China in 551 BC. He was a teacher and famous philosopher of ancient China.



**Paulo Freire** was born in Brazil in 1921. He was a secondary school teacher and philosopher.



## Unit 7, Speaking (page 81)

Complete the news story with the words from Speaking exercise 1 on page 81.

### NEWS! The (3) \_\_\_\_\_ -gate scandal!

Last week, the president had a secret meeting with (1) \_\_\_\_\_.

They went to (2) \_\_\_\_\_ and ate (3) \_\_\_\_\_.

They talked about (4) \_\_\_\_\_ and (5) \_\_\_\_\_.

(1) \_\_\_\_\_ asked, (6) '\_\_\_\_\_'.  
(1)

The president answered, (7) '\_\_\_\_\_'.  
(2)

Reporters heard about the meeting at (8) \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday.

It was front page news of the (9) \_\_\_\_\_ this morning.  
(3)



## Unit 7, Vocabulary (page 82)



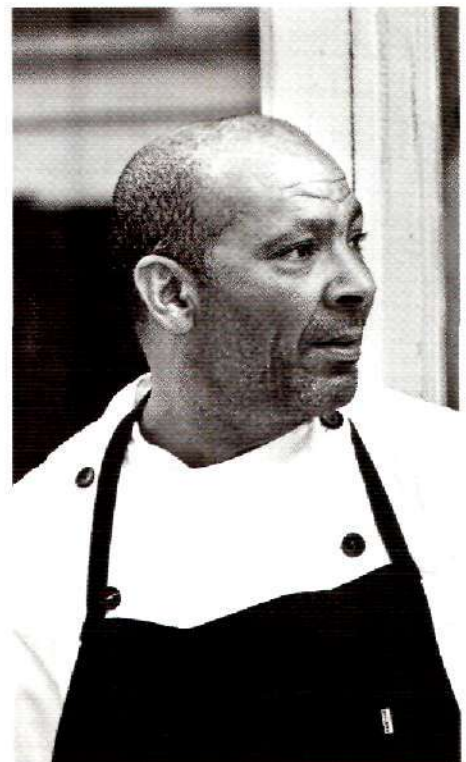
For me, cold is  $-35^{\circ}\text{C}$   
or  $-40^{\circ}\text{C}$ .

In the summer it gets hot  
here too. It can be  $30^{\circ}\text{C}$ .

That's hot.  
**Olga, Siberia**

It isn't very hot here in  
Amman even in summer. For  
me,  $40^{\circ}\text{C}$  is very hot.  
In the winter we sometimes  
have snow. For me,  $4^{\circ}\text{C}$  is  
very cold.

**Hakim, Jordan**





# Additional material

## Unit 8, Speaking (page 91)

1 Look at the questionnaire on transport. Choose four questions and ask and answer in pairs.



- ☐ Is traffic a problem in your town?
- ☐ Do you live near your work or far away?
- ☐ Is parking a problem in your town?
- ☐ Do you travel around the city by public transport or do you take the car?
- ☐ Is public transport cheap or expensive in your town?
- ☐ Do you prefer to go on foot or by bicycle?
- ☐ Are people using bicycles more in your town?
- ☐ On a long trip do you prefer to go by car or by train?



2 Work with a different partner. Close your books. Ask each other the questions again.

*Do you live near your work or far away?*

*I live near my office.*

*Is parking a problem in your town?*

*Yes, it's expensive and it's difficult to find a space.*

## Unit 8, Writing (page 95)

1 Read two emails from someone living in a new country or city. Choose one of the emails and complete the sentences with your own ideas.

Dear \_\_\_\_\_ (person)

It's my first week here in \_\_\_\_\_ (city or country). I love it! The people here are \_\_\_\_\_ (comparative adjective) than at home. We went to a \_\_\_\_\_ (place) last night and it was great.

*That's all for now.*

Dear \_\_\_\_\_ (person)

Well, I'm still in \_\_\_\_\_ (city or country). Things aren't so good now. I don't have many friends and I'm feeling \_\_\_\_\_ (comparative adjective) than before. I didn't do anything last night.

*That's all for now.*

2 Continue the email. Use the sentences in Grammar exercise 2 on page 95 to help you.

3 Work in pairs and swap your emails.



## Unit 10, Speaking (page 119)

1 Complete the middle column with questions from Grammar exercise 2 on page 119.

2 Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions. If your partner says *Yes*, ask them the questions in the Yes box. If they say *No*, ask them the questions in the No box.

Yes	Question	No
When was it? Did you win?	<i>Have you ever been in a sporting competition?</i>	Are you a competitive person?
When was it? Where was it?		What sport would you like to see live?
What sports do you do? Where do you do them?		Do you prefer winter or summer sports?
What sport did you play? Who did you play with?		What sports did you do at school?
What sport did you do? How long did you do it?		Would you like to? Why / why not?

A: *Have you ever taken part in a sporting competition?*

B: *Yes, I was in an athletics competition.*

A: *When was it?*

B: *When I was at school.*

A: *Did you win?*

B: *No, I was third.*



# Additional material

## Unit 4, Reading (page 48)





# Phonetic symbols

## Single vowels

/ɪ/	fish	/fɪʃ/	( <b>build</b> , <b>busy</b> , <b>English</b> , <b>women</b> )
/i:/	bean	/bi:n/	( <b>he</b> , <b>key</b> , <b>niece</b> , <b>people</b> )
/ʊ/	foot	/fʊt/	( <b>could</b> , <b>put</b> , <b>woman</b> )
/u:/	shoe	/ʃu:/	( <b>fruit</b> , <b>rule</b> , <b>through</b> , <b>two</b> )
/e/	egg	/eg/	( <b>breakfast</b> , <b>friend</b> , <b>many</b> , <b>said</b> )
/ə/	mother	/ˈmʌðə/	( <b>arrive</b> , <b>colour</b> , <b>police</b> )
/ɜ:/	word	/wɜ:d/	( <b>learn</b> , <b>curly</b> , <b>skirt</b> , <b>birthday</b> )
/ɔ:/	talk	/tɔ:k/	( <b>four</b> , <b>horse</b> , <b>thought</b> , <b>water</b> )
/æ/	back	/bæk/	( <b>fat</b> , <b>cat</b> , <b>catch</b> , <b>bag</b> )
/ʌ/	bus	/bʌs/	( <b>blood</b> , <b>does</b> , <b>enough</b> , <b>onion</b> )
/ɑ:/	arm	/ɑ:m/	( <b>aunt</b> , <b>heart</b> , <b>laugh</b> , <b>past</b> )
/ɒ/	top	/tɒp/	( <b>what</b> , <b>stop</b> , <b>hot</b> )

## Diphthongs

/ɪə/	ear	/ɪə/	( <b>here</b> , <b>Italian</b> , <b>theatre</b> )
/eɪ/	face	/feɪs/	( <b>break</b> , <b>eight</b> , <b>email</b> , <b>say</b> , <b>they</b> )
/ʊə/	tourist	/ˈtʊərɪst/	( <b>plural</b> , <b>sure</b> )
/ɔɪ/	boy	/bɔɪ/	( <b>noise</b> , <b>toy</b> )
/əʊ/	nose	/ˈnəʊz/	( <b>although</b> , <b>coat</b> , <b>know</b> , <b>no</b> )
/eə/	hair	/heə/	( <b>careful</b> , <b>their</b> , <b>wear</b> , <b>where</b> )
/aɪ/	eye	/aɪ/	( <b>five</b> , <b>buy</b> , <b>die</b> , <b>my</b> )
/aʊ/	mouth	/maʊθ/	( <b>town</b> )

## Consonants

/p/	pen	/pen/	( <b>happy</b> )
/b/	bag	/bæg/	( <b>rabbit</b> )
/t/	tea	/ti:/	( <b>ate</b> , <b>fatter</b> , <b>worked</b> )
/d/	dog	/dɒg/	( <b>address</b> , <b>played</b> )
/tʃ/	chip	/tʃɪp/	( <b>natural</b> , <b>watch</b> )
/dʒ/	jazz	/dʒæz/	( <b>age</b> , <b>bridge</b> , <b>generous</b> )
/k/	cake	/keɪk/	( <b>chemistry</b> , <b>kitchen</b> , <b>toothache</b> )
/g/	girl	/gɜ:l/	( <b>foggy</b> , <b>dog</b> )
/f/	film	/fɪlm/	( <b>different</b> , <b>laugh</b> , <b>photograph</b> )
/v/	verb	/vɜ:b/	( <b>of</b> , <b>very</b> )
/θ/	thing	/θɪŋ/	( <b>thin</b> , <b>think</b> )
/ð/	these	/ði:z/	( <b>that</b> , <b>those</b> , <b>mother</b> )
/s/	snake	/sneɪk/	( <b>city</b> , <b>message</b> , <b>race</b> )
/z/	zoo	/zu:/	( <b>has</b> )
/ʃ/	shop	/ʃɒp/	( <b>description</b> , <b>machine</b> , <b>sugar</b> )
/ʒ/	television	/ˈteləvɪʒən/	( <b>garage</b> , <b>usual</b> )
/m/	map	/mæp/	( <b>summer</b> )
/n/	name	/neɪm/	( <b>sunny</b> , <b>knife</b> )
/ŋ/	ring	/rɪŋ/	( <b>sing</b> , <b>tongue</b> )
/h/	house	/haʊs/	( <b>who</b> )
/l/	leg	/leg/	( <b>hill</b> , <b>possible</b> )
/r/	road	/rəʊd/	( <b>carry</b> , <b>write</b> )
/w/	wine	/waɪn/	( <b>one</b> , <b>why</b> )
/j/	yes	/jes/	( <b>used</b> )

## Letters of the alphabet

/eɪ/	/i:/	/e/	/aɪ/	/əʊ/	/u:/	/ɑ:/
Aa	Bb	Ff	Ii	Oo	Qq	Rr
Hh	Cc	Ll	Yy		Uu	
Jj	Dd	Mm			Ww	
Kk	Ee	Nn				
	Gg	Ss				
	Pp	Xx				
	Tt	Zz				
	Vv					



# Grammar focus

## Unit 1

### Articles (a, an)

#### Singular nouns

Use the indefinite article *a / an* with singular nouns.

Use *a* with singular nouns starting with a consonant sound.

*a computer, a video*

Use *an* with singular nouns starting with a vowel sound.

*an apple, an umbrella*

#### Plural nouns

For plural nouns, write a number or no article.

*two computers*

*computers*

#### Plural spelling

- for most nouns add *s* to form the plural: *an airport - airports*
- for nouns ending in consonant + *y*, delete *y* and add *ies*: *a family - families*
- for nouns ending in *ch, sh, s* and *x* add *es* to form the plural: *sandwich - sandwiches*

### be

Affirmative (+)	Negative (-)	Question (?)	Short answer
I am (I'm) 35.	I am not (I'm not) Mr Norris.	Am I in this class?	Yes, I am. No, I'm not.
You / We / They are (You're / We're / They're) students.	You / We / They are not (aren't) in this hotel.	Are you / we / they teachers?	Yes, you / we / they are. No, you / we / they aren't.
He / She / It is (He's / She's / It's) from England.	He / She / It is not (isn't) a doctor.	Is he / she / it from Japan?	Yes, he / she / it is. No, he / she / it isn't.

### Possession

Subject pronoun	Possessive adjective
I	my
you*	your*
he	his
she	her
it	its
we	our
they	their

\* *you* is both singular and plural



# Unit 1 Exercises

## Articles (a, an)

1 Write the correct article. Then write the plural form.

a computer      two computers

- 1 bus
- 2 apple
- 3 email
- 4 dictionary

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form: a / an / -.

He's a doctor.

- 1 I'm a accountant.
- 2 I'm married, with two daughters.
- 3 We live in a interesting little village, near Berlin.
- 4 There's a big lake, where we sometimes swim.
- 5 There's a tourist information centre in the village.
- 6 You can get a tour bus to take you around, if you want.
- 7 In summer a visitors come and camp by the lake.
- 8 It's a lovely place to stay.

## be

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of *be*.

They are from Russia.

- 1 We are hotel directors.
- 2 They are German number plates.
- 3 It is a computer.
- 4 I am 36.
- 5 She is a teacher.
- 6 You are students.

5 Answer these questions with short answers. Make them true for you.

Are you a nurse? *No I'm not.*

- 1 Are you happy in your English class?
- 2 Is your partner in class from your country?
- 3 Are your classmates nice?
- 4 Is your English teacher friendly?
- 5 Is your homework easy?
- 6 Is English spelling difficult?
- 7 Are you all happy with this coursebook?

4 Rewrite these sentences according to the symbol in brackets.

He isn't a doctor. (?) *Is he a doctor?*

- 1 Are we in this hotel? (+)
- 2 It's from the US. (-)
- 3 Am I a doctor? (-)
- 4 They aren't directors. (?)
- 5 You're not 21! (+)
- 6 She's a student. (?)

## Possession

6 Decide if these sentences are correct (✓) or incorrect (✗). Then correct the mistakes.

Is this your book? ✓

I name is Sarah. ✗

*My name is Sarah.*

- 1 Is that your hotel?
- 2 ~~They~~ phone number is 021 455 6784.
- 3 ~~Her~~ is a photography student.
- 4 ~~Her~~ name is Isabella.
- 5 Ours books are in the classroom.
- 6 She is a doctor and his name is Angelina.
- 7 We are Portuguese but we teacher is American.
- 8 They are in room 108.

7 Complete the sentences with the correct form.

(student) Can you tell me your address?

- 1 (student) Excuse me, I think that's a pencil.
- 2 (teacher) Can I have a homework, please?
- 3 (teacher) Where's Max? Does anyone have a phone number?
- 4 (students) Could you give us a exam results, please?
- 5 (student) Can I borrow a rubber, Sara?
- 6 (teacher) Please spell a surname for me, Eva.
- 7 (student) Maria is not coming today. a car isn't working.



# Unit 2

## Prepositions of place

- use **from** to say your country or home town or to say the distance from another place.  
*I'm from Canberra. It's 650km from Melbourne.*
- use **near** to describe proximity.  
*It's near Sydney.*
- use **in** for countries or regions.  
*It's in Australia. It's in New South Wales.*

## Wh- questions

- use **what** to ask about things.  
*What's your address?*  
*32 King Street, Liverpool.*
- use **where** to ask about places.  
*Where's he from?*  
*Nigeria.*
- use **how old** to ask about age.  
*How old is she?*  
*21 or 22.*
- use **why** to ask about reasons.  
*Why are they here?*  
*To rent a car.*
- use **when** to ask about time.  
*When is your meeting?*  
*6.30.*

With *be* the order is question word + *be* + subject + etc.

## Present simple, affirmative and negative

Affirmative	Negative
I / You / We / They <b>get up</b> . He / She / It <b>gets up</b> .	I / You / We / They <b>don't get up</b> . He / She / It <b>doesn't get up</b> .

Use the present simple to talk about:

- habits and routines.  
*I get up at seven o'clock.*
- things that are always true.  
*October has 31 days.*

## Spelling rules for the third person (he, she, it)

- after most verbs add *s*: *I get up – he gets up, we live – she lives*
- after verbs ending in *y*, delete *y* and add *ies*: *they study – she studies*
- after verbs ending in vowels, *ch*, *sh*, *s* and *x*, add *es*: *you finish – he finishes, they go – she goes*
- verbs such as *be* and *have* are irregular: *be – he is, have – she has*

Form the negative with auxiliary *don't* (*do not*) or *doesn't* (*does not*) + infinitive.

*I get up – I don't get up*

*We live – We don't live*

*He finishes – He doesn't finish*



# Unit 2 Exercises

## Prepositions of place

1 Read the text and choose the correct answer.

My name's Aki and I'm *from* / *in* Kyoto. It is *in* / *near* Japan.  
Kyoto is 450km *from* / *in* the capital, Tokyo. Kyoto is *near* / *in* the city, Osaka. About 2.6 million people live *in* / *from* Osaka.

2 Write a few sentences about yourself. Use *in*, *from* and *near*.

You can use the ideas to help you.

*I live in a small town in the north of Latvia, about an hour from the capital city of Riga. I live in a small flat near town, five minutes walk from the supermarket ...*

<b>in</b>	<b>near / from</b>
(small / big) house	river
flat	town centre
village	shops
town	workplace
south of the country	school / college / university
a (nice / modern) place (called ...)	the train station
the countryside	a park

## Wh- questions

3 Complete the questions with the correct *Wh-* question word. Then answer them.

How old    What    What    When    Where    Why

*What* is your name? *My name is Alberto.*

- \_\_\_\_\_ are you from?
- \_\_\_\_\_ are you?
- \_\_\_\_\_ is your English class?
- \_\_\_\_\_ is your phone number?
- \_\_\_\_\_ are you interested in English?

4 Put the words below in the correct order to make questions. Then match the questions 1–5 to the correct answers a–e.

- |                                     |                           |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1 hotel Where the is ?              | a Bogotá.                 |
| 2 old your car is How ?             | b Two years old.          |
| 3 in Why you New York are ?         | c Near the airport.       |
| 4 capital What of Columbia is the ? | d For a business meeting. |
| 5 Manchester to When the is train ? | e In ten minutes.         |

## Present simple, affirmative and negative

5 Write sentences with the correct form of the present simple.

get up at 7 o'clock (she +)

*She gets up at 7 o'clock.*

- use a computer (he -)
- repeat the exercise (they -)
- have a car (she +)
- write emails at work (we +)
- go home at 6.30 (he +)
- start class at 9.00 (you -)
- do her homework (she +)
- listen to the radio (I -)

6 Read the text and choose the correct answer.

I (1) *work / works* in an office and my friend (2) *work / works* in a restaurant. Our days are very different. I (3) *get up / gets up* at seven o'clock and I start work at nine o'clock, but she (4) *don't start / doesn't start* work until five o'clock so she (5) *get up / gets up* at 11.00. I have lunch at work but she (6) *have / has* lunch at home. I (7) *finish / do finish* work at half past five and I get home about half past six. She (8) *finishes / finishes* work at 1.00am and she (9) *get / gets* home at 1.30am. I (10) *don't work / not work* at the weekend, but she (11) *work / works* on Saturday and Sunday. She (12) *doesn't works / doesn't work* on Monday.



# Units 3 & 4

## Possessive 's

Use **'s** to show possession with people.

*My mother's car.* Not: ~~The car of my mother~~

We usually use *of* and not **'s** before things and places.

*The door of the classroom. The president of the United States.*

For regular plural nouns, write **s'**.

*My sisters' husbands.* (= I have more than one married sister)

For irregular plural nouns write **'s**.

*The children's teacher.*

## Yes / No questions

Question	Short answer
Do I / you / we / they work?	Yes, I / you / we / they <b>do</b> . No, I / you / we / they <b>don't</b> .
Does he / she / it work?	Yes, he / she / it <b>does</b> . No, he / she / it <b>doesn't</b> .

Form **yes / no** questions with the auxiliary *do / does*. The order is *Do / Does + subject + infinitive*.

For **yes / no** short answers, the order is

*Yes / No + subject + does / doesn't.*

*Does he live in London? Yes, he **does**. / No, he **doesn't**.*

## Wh- questions

Question words (*What? Where? How old? Why? When?*) go at the start of the question.

The order is *Wh-question + do / does + subject + infinitive*.

*Where do you live?*

For more on the auxiliary *do / does* and *Wh-* question words see Grammar focus Unit 2 on page 138.

## Object pronouns

Subject pronoun	I	you	he	she	it	we	they
Object pronoun	me	you	him	her	it	us	them

Use object pronouns **after** the verb.

*English? I love **it**.*

*I don't like **them** very much.*

## there is / there are

Use *there is* and *there are* to say something or someone exists.

Form the affirmative with *there is* + singular noun and *there are* + plural noun.

*There's a pen on the table. There are eight people in my class.*

Form the negative with **there isn't a ... / there aren't any ...**  
*There **isn't** a phone in here. There **aren't** any restaurants here.*

Form the question with *is / are + there + a / any*.

*Is there a bank near here? Are there any dictionaries?*

## Countable and uncountable nouns

Countable nouns have a singular and a plural form. Most plural countable nouns end in *s*.

Use *a / an*, a number or *some* before countable nouns.

*a hotel, two hotels, some hotels*

Use *some* or no article before uncountable nouns.

*I have **fruit** for breakfast. I'd like **some fruit**.*

Some nouns can be countable and uncountable.

*I love **tea**.* (uncountable – tea in general)

*Two **teas** please.* (countable – two cups of tea)

## Quantifiers

### Affirmative

#### Countable

There are **lots of** shops.

There are **some** books.

#### Uncountable

It costs **a lot of** money.

There's **some** food.

### Negative and questions

#### Countable

**How many** bananas are there?

There aren't **any** apples.

Are there **any** restaurants?

There aren't **many** oranges.

#### Uncountable

**How much** rice is there?

There isn't **any** juice.

Is there **any** milk?

There isn't **much** fruit.



# Units 3 & 4 Exercises

## Possessive 's

1 Correct these sentences.

The friend of my daughter *My daughter's friend*

- |                          |                            |                           |
|--------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1 the teacher of my son  | 3 the hotel of our friends | 5 the cars of the men     |
| 2 the book of her friend | 4 the wife of my brother   | 6 the home of his cousins |

## Yes / No questions

2 Match questions 1-5 to answers a-e. Then write the answers so they are true for you.

- |                                            |                    |
|--------------------------------------------|--------------------|
| 1 Do you and your family live in a city?   | a Yes, he does.    |
| 2 Does your sister have any children?      | b Yes, they do.    |
| 3 Do you have a brother?                   | c Yes, we do.      |
| 4 Do your parents know any English people? | d No, I don't.     |
| 5 Does your uncle live near you?           | e No, she doesn't. |

## Wh- questions

3 Write questions about the underlined information.

What does he do? He's a radiologist.

- |                                                    |                                                |
|----------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| 1 _____ He works <u>in a hospital</u> .            | 4 _____ She has <u>two</u> children.           |
| 2 _____ He sees his sister <u>at the weekend</u> . | 5 _____ Her children are <u>six and four</u> . |
| 3 _____ She lives <u>in Manchester</u> .           |                                                |

## Object pronouns

4 Replace the underlined words with the correct object pronoun.

I work with John. *I work with him.*

- |                                              |                                         |                                                    |
|----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| 1 We visit <u>our parents</u> every weekend. | 3 I work with <u>Maria</u> .            | 5 I love <u>their dog</u> .                        |
| 2 I live near <u>my brother</u> .            | 4 They live near <u>my wife and I</u> . | 6 I usually go on holiday with <u>my cousins</u> . |

## there is / there are

5 Make 4 sentences using the prompts below about a hotel.

- |                    |                     |
|--------------------|---------------------|
| 1 a gym (X)        | 3 meeting rooms (✓) |
| 2 guided tours (X) | 4 a restaurant (✓)  |

## Countable and uncountable nouns

6 Write countable (C) or uncountable (U).

- |          |          |
|----------|----------|
| 1 milk   | 5 cake   |
| 2 egg    | 6 dollar |
| 3 cheese | 7 money  |
| 4 bread  | 8 time   |

7 Write sentences about the information using *lots of* (+++), *some* (++), *not much / many* (+), *not any* (-).

apples + *There aren't many apples.*

- |               |                  |               |
|---------------|------------------|---------------|
| 1 coffee (-)  | 4 potatoes (+++) | 7 oranges (-) |
| 2 juice (+++) | 5 bananas (++)   | 8 milk (+)    |
| 3 jam (+)     | 6 rice (++)      |               |

## Quantifiers

8 Read the dialogue and choose the correct option.

A: Would you like (1) *some / any* coffee? Oh, I'm sorry, there isn't (2) *some / any* coffee.

B: No problem. Can I have (3) *some / any* tea?

A: Sure. Would you like something to eat?

B: Yes, please.

A: Let's see - there's (4) *not much / not many* food in the house - ah good. There are (5) *some / many* biscuits.

B: Great - thanks.



# Units 5 & 6

## Frequency adverbs (every day, once a week ...)

To ask about frequency, use the question *How often ...?*

The order is *How often + do + subject + verb*.

*How often do you watch foreign films?*

We can give a specific answer with *every + day / week / month / year*, etc.

*I go to the cinema every week.*

We can say the number of times we do something with *once / twice / three times / four times + a day / week / month / year*, etc.

(once = one time; twice = two times)

The frequency adverb normally goes at the end of the sentence.

*I have my English class twice a week.*

## Frequency adverbs (always, often ...)

To give a more general answer about frequency, use *always, often, sometimes, not often, never*.

With most verbs the order is *subject + frequency adverb + verb*.

*I sometimes watch TV on the internet.*

With *be* the order is *subject + be + frequency adverb*.

*She is always late.*

## can

Use *can + verb* (without *to*) to talk about possibilities.

*We can use the company's sports club.*

Not: *We can to use the company's sports club.*

*Can* does not change in the third person.

*I can use the company car.*

*My wife can use the company car too.*

To form the negative, add *not (n't)*.

*I can't walk to my office.*

*She can't eat for free.*

To form questions, the order is *Can + subject + verb*.

*Can you use the company car?*

*Can she make personal calls?*

## Adverbs with can

Use *can / can't + verb* to describe abilities.

*I can type. I can't speak German.*

Use adverbs to describe how we do things. We form most adverbs by adding *ly* to the adjective: *quick – quickly, bad – badly*

*He can type very quickly. They speak English badly.*

If the adjective ends in *y*, we form the adverb with *ily*: *noisy – noisily*

Some adverbs are irregular: *good – well, fast – fast*.

*She plays the piano well. He can swim very fast.*

## was / were

Affirmative	Negative	Question	Short answer
I / He / She / It was.	I / He / She / It wasn't (was not).	Was I / he / she / it?	Yes, I / he / she / it was. No, I / he / she / it wasn't.
You / We / They were.	You / We / They weren't (were not).	Were you / we / they?	Yes, you / we / they were. No, you / we / they weren't.

*Was / were* is the past form of the verb *be*.

*We were late for work today.*

Form the negative with *was + not (n't)*.

*I wasn't good at maths.*

## Questions with was / were

For *yes / no* questions use *Was / Were + subject*.

*Were you a good student?*

For other questions the order is *Wh- question word + was / were + subject*. *Where was your school?*



# Units 5 & 6 Exercises

## Frequency adverbs (every day, once a week ...)

1 Put the words in the correct order to make questions.  
Then answer them.

- 1 cinema do go you How to the often ?
- 2 often do the How you watch news ?
- 3 friends How see often you do your ?
- 4 have English often How your class do you ?
- 5 you documentaries often How do watch ?

## Frequency adverbs (always, often ...)

2 Rewrite these sentences with the frequency adverb in the correct position.

- 1 I watch TV with my wife. (never)
- 2 The children are in front of the TV when I get home. (often)
- 3 He plays video games. (sometimes)
- 4 She is the first to get to the English class. (always)
- 5 They go on holiday abroad. (not often)
- 6 We go to bed early. (often)

3 Correct the sentences.

- 1 Never I watch TV in the mornings.
- 2 They go the cinema one a month.
- 3 She goes to the gym every weeks.
- 4 How often you go home for lunch?
- 5 I get up at 6.00am three time a week.
- 6 We not often play computer games.
- 7 He often is late for work.
- 8 I go to an exhibition two times a year.

## can

4 Write sentences based on the information in the table.

You can swim.

	swim	speak Arabic	drive
you	✓	✗	?
he	?	✓	✗
they	✗	?	✓

5 Find and correct six mistakes in the dialogue.

A: Do you can use a computer?

B: Well, I can to do basic things: I'm can write documents and send emails but I can't do anything complicated. My brother's the expert. He works in computer graphics and he cans do programming.

A: Perhaps he can to help me with my computer.

B: I'll ask him.

## Adverbs with can

6 Write positive and negative sentences with *can* using the prompts.

I / type / quick (✓) I can type quickly.

- 1 I / swim / quick (✓)
- 2 He / draw / good (✗)
- 3 They / play the piano / good (✓)
- 4 You / Speak English / good (✗)
- 5 She / speak / quiet (✗)
- 6 She / learn new things / easy (✓)

## was / were

7 Complete the sentences with *was*, *were*, *wasn't* or *weren't*.

Last week my family and I (1) \_\_\_\_\_ in Morocco on holiday. We (2) \_\_\_\_\_ in Marrakesh. We (3) \_\_\_\_\_ happy with the hotel – it was dirty! And the weather (4) \_\_\_\_\_ good – it rained every day! But the people (5) \_\_\_\_\_ friendly and the food (6) \_\_\_\_\_ delicious.

8 Complete the questions with *Was* or *Were*. Then match the questions to the answers.

- |                                  |                     |
|----------------------------------|---------------------|
| 1 _____ you late for work?       | a No, they weren't. |
| 2 _____ the film scary?          | b No, he wasn't.    |
| 3 _____ your mother at home?     | c No, it wasn't.    |
| 4 _____ we in the newspaper?     | d Yes, I was.       |
| 5 _____ your parents on holiday? | e Yes, she was.     |
| 6 _____ your brother at work?    | f Yes, we were.     |



# Unit 7

## Past simple (regular verbs)

Use the past simple to talk about completed actions in the past, usually at a specific time.

The time expressions *yesterday*, *last week / month / year* and *five years ago* are often used with the past simple.

*I watched a good film yesterday.*

### -ed spelling

- for most verbs add *ed*: answer – answered
- for verbs ending in *e*, add *d*: create – created
- for verbs ending in *y*, change the *y* to *ied*: try – tried. (But verbs ending in vowel + *y* are regular: play – played).
- for verbs ending in consonant-vowel-consonant, double the consonant and add *ed*: stop – stopped

Use the same form for all persons (*I, you, he, she, it, we, they*) except for the verb *to be*.

## Past simple (irregular verbs)

Many common verbs have an irregular affirmative form.

Infinitive	Past Simple
be	was / were
become	became
begin	began
buy	bought
can	came
come	could
choose	chose
do	did
drink	drank
drive	drove
eat	ate
feel	felt
get	got
go	went
have	had

Infinitive	Past Simple
hear	heard
know	knew
learn	learnt
leave	left
make	made
meet	met
ride	rode
run	ran
see	saw
sing	sung
sit	sat
sleep	slept
swim	swam
take	took
think	thought
win	won
write	wrote

### it

Use *it* to:

- replace singular nouns.  
*Where's my book? I saw **it** in the kitchen.*
- talk about the time, the weather, the date, etc.  
*It's six o'clock. **It's** the 7<sup>th</sup> July today.*

Don't repeat *it* when you have another subject.

*My car is blue.*

Not: *My car ~~it's~~ blue.*

## Past simple (questions and negative)

Affirmative	Negative	Question	Short answer
I / You / He / She / It / We / They <b>answered</b> the phone.	I / You / He / She / It / We / They <b>did not (didn't)</b> answer the phone.	<b>Did</b> I / you / he / she / it / we / they <b>answer</b> the phone?	<b>Yes</b> , I / you / he / she / it / we / they <b>did</b> . <b>No</b> , I / you / he / she / it / we / they <b>didn't</b> .

Form past simple questions and negatives with the auxiliary verb *did*.

***Did** you enjoy the party?*

*They **didn't** go to the museum.*

With *Wh-* questions the order is

*Wh-* question word + *did* + subject + verb.

***Where did** you go last night?*



# Unit 7 Exercises

## Past simple (regular verbs)

1 Write the past simple form of these regular verbs.

- 1 talk
- 2 ask
- 3 stop
- 4 use
- 5 print
- 6 like
- 7 want
- 8 chat
- 9 start
- 10 study

2 Use these verbs to complete the description. Change them to the correct past form.

cook start arrive want visit study phone finish  
talk show

I was very busy yesterday evening. When I (1) \_\_\_\_\_ home, I (2) \_\_\_\_\_ my grandmother because it was her birthday. It was sunny so I (3) \_\_\_\_\_ English for an hour in my garden. Then a friend (4) \_\_\_\_\_ because she (5) \_\_\_\_\_ to see my new house, so I (6) \_\_\_\_\_ her around. We (7) \_\_\_\_\_ for a couple of hours, and I (8) \_\_\_\_\_ dinner. After eating, we (9) \_\_\_\_\_ listening to music. When we (10) \_\_\_\_\_, it was after 1.00am! It was fun, but I am very tired today!

## Past simple (irregular verbs)

3 Complete the text with the correct past simple form of the verb in brackets. Some verbs are regular and some are irregular.

Katharine Graham \_\_\_\_\_ (be) born in 1917. She \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to Chicago university and later \_\_\_\_\_ (work) at *The Washington Post* as a journalist. She \_\_\_\_\_ (become) the publisher of *The Washington Post* in 1963 during the time of the Watergate scandal, a story that \_\_\_\_\_ (end) Nixon's presidency. She later \_\_\_\_\_ (write) her autobiography, *Personal History*. The book \_\_\_\_\_ (win) the Pulitzer Prize in 1998. She \_\_\_\_\_ (die) in 2001.

4 Write full answers to the questions about yourself.

What did you have for breakfast this morning? *I had some fruit and yogurt.*

- 1 What time did you leave home this morning?
- 2 How did you get to school / work / college?
- 3 Did you have any problems on the way?
- 4 Who did you speak to this morning before 10.30 am?
- 5 Did you do any work last night?
- 6 What did you have for your evening meal?
- 7 Did you make it yourself?
- 8 What time did you go to bed?
- 9 How did you sleep?

## it

5 Decide if these sentences are correct (✓) or incorrect (✗). Then correct the mistakes.

- 1 It's 10 o'clock.
- 2 My birthday it's in June.
- 3 Is warm and sunny today.
- 4 Is that fish? I'm afraid I can't eat it.
- 5 What time is?
- 6 I like this book. Is about a family in the 1920s.

6 Write what you think 'it' refers to in these sentences.

It's very sunny today. *The weather*

- 1 It's fantastic, and a lovely colour too. I get to work really quickly now!
- 2 I don't really know, but it's probably about 2.30.
- 3 It's beautiful! Is it a boy or a girl?
- 4 My teacher gave me this, but it's really difficult and I can't do it.
- 5 It's sweet and people eat it for breakfast on bread.
- 6 I love it. I can wear it for my cousin's wedding.
- 7 Don't sit on it. It's still wet!
- 8 Can I have a piece? It looks and smells delicious!

## Past simple (questions and negative)

7 Change the sentence according to the symbol in brackets.

I didn't answer the phone. (?)

*Did you answer the phone?*

- 1 I walked to the museum. (-)
- 2 Did you know her name? (-)
- 3 They didn't get up early. (?)
- 4 She left when the class finished. (?)
- 5 He didn't write her an email. (+)
- 6 Did they go to the meeting? (+)
- 7 I didn't ask the teacher. (?)
- 8 I saw him at the office. (-)

8 Write questions for the answers about a holiday.

*Who did you go with?* I went with my husband.

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_? We went to Lisbon.
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_? We went last summer.
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_? We stayed in a hotel.
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_? We went to museums, we visited the old town and we went to the coast for a day.
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_? We were there for a week.
- 6 \_\_\_\_\_? We ate fish and seafood.



# Unit 8

## Present continuous

Affirmative	Negative	Question
I <b>am</b> ('m) <b>working</b> . You / We / They <b>are</b> ('re) <b>working</b> . He / She / It <b>is</b> ('s) <b>working</b> .	I <b>am not</b> ('m not) <b>working</b> . You / We / They <b>are not</b> (aren't) <b>working</b> . He / She / It <b>is not</b> (isn't) <b>working</b> .	<b>Am</b> I <b>working</b> ? <b>Are</b> you / we / they <b>working</b> ? <b>Is</b> he / she / it <b>working</b> ?

Form the present continuous with the *be* + verb + *ing*.

*She's **waiting** for a bus.*

*They **aren't going** by car.*

*Is public transport **getting** more expensive in your city?*

### -ing spelling

- for most verbs add *ing*: work – **working**
- for verbs ending in *e*, delete *e* and add *ing*: write – **writing**
- for verbs ending in consonant-vowel-consonant, double the consonant and add *ing*: sit – **sitting**

## Present simple and present continuous

Use the present simple for things which are generally true and habitual actions.

Use the present continuous to describe what is happening at this moment or around the present time.

*I usually **come** to work by car, but this week I'm **coming** by bus.*

We use different time expressions with the present simple and the present continuous.

Present Simple	Present Continuous
usually often every day never	now these days at the moment this week / month / year

Time expressions with the present continuous normally come at the end of the sentence. They come at the beginning of the sentence for emphasis.

For the position of frequency expressions with the present simple see Grammar focus Unit 5 on page 142.

## The comparative

	Adjective	Comparative
One syllable adjectives and adverbs: add <i>er</i>	fast	<b>faster</b>
One syllable adjectives ending with one consonant: double the final consonant and add <i>er</i>	big	<b>bigger</b>
Adjectives ending in <i>e</i> : add <i>r</i>	nice	<b>nicer</b>
Adjectives ending in <i>y</i> : change the <i>y</i> to <i>ie</i> and add <i>r</i>	sunny	<b>sunnier</b>
Two or more syllable adjectives: add <i>more</i> + adjective	expensive	<b>more expensive</b>
Irregular adjectives	good bad	<b>better</b> <b>worse</b>

Use comparative adjectives + *than* to contrast two things or people.

*Russia is **bigger than** Poland.*

## The infinitive of purpose

Use the infinitive to say why we do something.

*I'm studying English **to get** a better job.*



# Unit 8 Exercises

## Present continuous

1 Put the words in the correct order.

- 1 son basketball My is practising .
- 2 computer My working isn't .
- 3 The getting weather hotter is .
- 4 dictionary Are using you this ?
- 5 at They studying school three are languages .
- 6 this to driving I'm work week not .
- 7 English Are homework you your doing ?
- 8 at reading the moment I'm really good a book .

2 Complete the sentences with the verb in the correct form.

- 1 'Is Jim at work?' 'No, but he \_\_\_\_\_ (work) from home this week.'
- 2 'What's that nice smell?' 'My mum \_\_\_\_\_ (make) a cake.'
- 3 'Are you listening to me?' 'No, I \_\_\_\_\_ (do) my work.'
- 4 'Where's Stefan?' 'He \_\_\_\_\_ (have) a bath.'
- 5 'Can you help me?' 'Sorry. I \_\_\_\_\_ (email) a friend.'
- 6 'What language is that?' 'I \_\_\_\_\_ (learn) Russian.'

## Present simple and present continuous

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets. Use the present simple or present continuous.

- 1 I \_\_\_\_\_ (make) some coffee. Do you want some?
- 2 She \_\_\_\_\_ (work) in a secondary school.
- 3 They \_\_\_\_\_ (visit) her mother this weekend.
- 4 'They \_\_\_\_\_ (repair) my car, so this week I \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to work by train.
- 5 She's a primary school teacher, but this term she \_\_\_\_\_ (work) in a secondary school.
- 6 I \_\_\_\_\_ (like) sports and I \_\_\_\_\_ (learn) how to play golf this year.

4 Decide if the present continuous or the present simple is correct. Tick (✓) the best one in each case.

- 1 I speak three languages, but not very well. \_\_\_\_  
I'm speaking three languages, but not very well. \_\_\_\_
- 2 My mother usually cooks, but today my father cooks. \_\_\_\_  
My mother usually cooks, but today my father is cooking. \_\_\_\_
- 3 Excuse me, I try to get to the town centre. \_\_\_\_  
Excuse me, I'm trying to get to the town centre. \_\_\_\_
- 4 My friend's away. He's studying English in Oxford for three weeks. \_\_\_\_  
My friend's away. He studies English in Oxford for three weeks. \_\_\_\_

## The comparative

5 Write sentences with the comparative form of the adjective in brackets.

Amazon / Mississippi (long)

*The Amazon is longer than the Mississippi.*

- 1 Rio de Janeiro / Brasilia (big)
- 2 whisky / water (expensive)
- 3 Madrid / Moscow (hot)
- 4 skiing / swimming (dangerous)
- 5 a Ferrari / a Ford (fast)
- 6 vegetables / hamburgers (good for you)

6 Make sentences about you and your teacher using the adjectives below.

young   friendly   tall   good at English   slim   strong  
nervous   serious

*(I think) I'm younger than my teacher.*

## The infinitive of purpose

7 Match the sentence halves.

- |                                 |                             |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1 I went to Manchester          | a to see the Louvre museum. |
| 2 I'm working nights            | b to get more exercise.     |
| 3 I'm going to the supermarket  | c to go snowboarding.       |
| 4 They went to Paris            | d to see a football match.  |
| 5 She joined a photography club | e to earn more money.       |
| 6 He went to the Alps           | f to meet people.           |
| 7 She bought a bike             | g to buy some pasta.        |

8 Answer the questions. You can use the verbs below.

relax   watch   look up   buy   talk   eat   earn

Why do people go to the cinema? *To watch films.*

- 1 Why do people use dictionaries?
- 2 Why do people use knives and forks?
- 3 Why do people use mobile phones?
- 4 Why do people work?
- 5 Why do people go to the supermarket?
- 6 Why do people go on holiday?



# Unit 9

## Present perfect

Affirmative	Negative	Question	Short answer
I / You / We / They <b>have</b> (ve) met him. He / She / It <b>has</b> (s) met him.	I / You / We / They <b>have not</b> (haven't) met him. He / She / It <b>has not</b> (hasn't) met him.	<b>Have</b> I / you / we / they met him? <b>Has</b> he / she / it met him?	<b>Yes</b> , I / you / we / they <b>have</b> . <b>No</b> , I / you / we / they <b>haven't</b> .

The present perfect is formed with the verb *have* + past participle. The past participle of regular verbs is the same as the past simple. See a more complete list of past participles on page 158.

Use the present perfect to talk about past experiences without specifying exactly when they happened:

*I've been to Mexico. They haven't met my parents.*

We often use *ever* (= in your life) and *never* (= not in your life) with the present perfect.

*Have you ever eaten sushi? She's never been to a zoo.*

## The superlative

	Adjective	Superlative
One syllable adjectives and adverbs: add <i>est</i> One syllable adjectives ending with one consonant: double the final consonant and add <i>est</i>	long big	the longest the biggest
Adjectives ending in <i>e</i> : add <i>st</i>	nice	the nicest
Adjectives ending in <i>y</i> : change the <i>y</i> to <i>ie</i> and add <i>st</i>	funny	the funniest
Two or more syllable adjectives: add <i>most</i> + adjective	dangerous	the most dangerous
Irregular adjectives	good bad	the best the worst

Use the superlative to compare something with all the others in a group. Notice that *the* comes before the superlative adjective.

*It's the best place to live. He's the oldest in the class.*

*It's the cheapest café in town.*

We often use the superlative with the present perfect.

*This is the best meal I've ever eaten.*

## have got

Affirmative	Negative	Question	Past simple
I / You / We / They've got a car.	I / You / We / They haven't got a car.	<b>Have</b> I / you / we / they got a car?	I / You / We / They <b>had</b> a car.
He / She / It <b>has</b> got a car.	He / She / It <b>hasn't</b> got a car.	<b>Has</b> he / she / it got a car?	He / She / It <b>had</b> a car.

Use *have got* (or *have*) to talk about possession or to describe family / relationships.

*They've got blue eyes. I've got two brothers.*

*Have got* is informal. It is common in spoken English but not in written English.

The past tense of *have got* is *had*.

*I had a car two years ago.*

Not: *I had got a car two years ago.*

We don't use *have got* to describe actions.

Not: *She has got breakfast at eight o'clock.*

## one and ones

Use *one* (singular) and *ones* (plural) to refer to a countable noun.

*Which is your brother?*

*The tall one on the left.*

We usually use *one* with an adjective, or after *this* / *that* / *these* / *those*.

*He was the first one. I want that one.*



# Unit 9 Exercises

## Present perfect

1 Look at the information below and make sentences about Ivan.

- visit the British Museum (✓)
- visit Buckingham Palace (✓)
- take a boat on the River Thames (✗)
- eat fish and chips (?)
- see the Tate Gallery (✓)
- travel on a red bus (?)
- go shopping in Oxford Street (✗)

*He's visited the British Museum.*

2 Complete the text with the present perfect form of the verbs.

My friend Timothy is a chef and he loves his job. He (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (work) all over the world, in all sorts of interesting places. He (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (prepare) food for some very important parties and dinners. He (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (meet) some famous people, and he (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (cook) on a cruise ship too. He (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (win) some big prizes for his wonderful food and now he wants to start a chain of restaurants. In fact, he (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (buy) one restaurant already and he's going to open it next year. Timothy has big plans for the future. He (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (do) all of this, and he's not yet 40 years old!

## The superlative

3 Read the sentences and correct the mistakes.

- 1 Detroit and St Louis are the more dangerous cities in the US.
- 2 This is the interestingest book I've ever read.
- 3 Scotland is the coldest part of the United Kingdom.
- 4 Lance is the baddest student in the class.
- 5 That's one of the uglyest animals I've ever seen.
- 6 She's the most beautifullest of the three sisters.

4 Complete the sentences using the adjectives in the superlative form.

*expensive interesting happy tasty good*

- 1 I went away with my best friend last year. That was \_\_\_\_\_ holiday of my life. We had so much fun and laughed all the time!
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ holiday I have ever had, was to an island off Thailand. Everything about it was fantastic.
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ thing I saw on that holiday was lots of tiny baby turtles. I'll never forget it.
- 4 I love Thai food! I think it's \_\_\_\_\_ of all food.
- 5 We stayed in a beautiful hotel. It was \_\_\_\_\_ hotel on the island. It cost £100 a night!

## have got

5 Rewrite the sentences with *have got* where they are possible.

I have two cousins.

*I've got two cousins.*

- 1 I have a shower when I get up.
- 2 I have three good friends at work.
- 3 She has a house in the country.
- 4 Their house has four bedrooms.
- 5 We have dinner at 7.30pm.
- 6 They have black hair.
- 7 When I was a child I had blonde hair.
- 8 He has a new mobile phone.

6 Put the sentences in order. Be careful, some of them are questions.

very Your long got has daughter hair. → Your daughter has got very long hair.

- 1 wife n't computer got My has a.
- 2 've headache I a bad got really.
- 3 job has a moment brother the got My n't at.
- 4 with 's a leg woman got That problem her.
- 5 got a I has it phone your camera mobile on?
- 6 got you right Have the time?
- 7 adult children an with Have those got them?
- 8 your Mary address got email Has new?

## one and ones

7 Match the questions to the answers.

- 1 Is there a shoe shop near here?
- 2 How many pairs of jeans have you got?
- 3 Do you like that woman's jacket?
- 4 Which shop did you go to?
- 5 Which socks do you want?
- 6 What do you think of these?

- a I've got some blue ones and some black ones.
- b The grey one? No, it's awful.
- c The one in Station Road.
- d The red ones are OK but I don't like the brown ones.
- e These ones.
- f Yes, there's one next to the supermarket.



# Unit 10

## The -ing form

Use the *-ing* form of the verb to describe an activity.

*I love **skiing**.*

We often use the *-ing* form at the start of a sentence or after the verbs *like*, *love*, *hate*, etc.

***Learning** English is hard work!*

*I don't like **using** my mobile phone on the train.*

For spelling of the *-ing* form see Unit 8 Grammar focus page 146.

## going to

Affirmative	Negative	Question	Short answer
I am ('m) going to learn Chinese.	I am not ('m not) going to learn Chinese.	Am I going to learn Chinese?	Yes, I am. No, I'm not.
You / We / They are ('re) going to learn Chinese.	You / We / They are not (aren't) going to learn Chinese.	Are you / we / they going to learn Chinese?	Yes, you / we / they are. No, you / we / they aren't.
He / She / It is ('s) going to learn Chinese.	He / She / It is not (isn't) going to learn Chinese.	Is he / she / it going to learn Chinese?	Yes, he / she / it is. No, he / she / it isn't.

Use *be + going to + verb* to describe personal plans and intentions for the future.

*I'm going to stop smoking next year.*

With *go*, we don't usually use *going to go* to avoid repeating the verb.

*I'm going to France next year.*

Not: *I'm going to go to France next year.*

## Present perfect and past simple

Use the present perfect when we don't know or specify when the event happened.

*I've **been** to Canada.*

Use the past simple when the time is specified.

The past simple is often used with expressions such as *in 2009*, *three days / weeks ago*, *when I was 16*, *yesterday*, *last week / month / year*, etc.

*I **visited** Vancouver in August 2009.*

*They **arrived** yesterday.*



# Unit 10 Exercises

## The -ing form

1 Rewrite the sentences to include an appropriate verb in the -ing form. In some sentences you may need to include a preposition.

I like Chinese food.

*I like eating Chinese food.*

- 1 I like science fiction films.
- 2 He likes jazz.
- 3 They love black coffee.
- 4 She hates big supermarkets.
- 5 We don't like poetry.
- 6 You love museums.
- 7 She likes football.
- 8 He loves his car.

## going to

2 Match the reply to the question or comment.

- 1 Will you be at Angela's party?
- 2 Are you going to have a holiday?
- 3 Is your car OK now?
- 4 You don't look too good.
- 5 You didn't phone Pavel.
- 6 Did you buy that camera?
- 7 Have you tried that new café?
- 8 Aren't your friends from Egypt going to visit soon?

- a I'm not sure. I'm going to take it to the mechanic's later.
- b I know. I'm going to speak to him after lunch.
- c Yes. They're going to come next week.
- d I'm going to look online first.
- e I'm going to meet some friends there this weekend.
- f I'm not going to go, because she didn't invite me!
- g I'm going to take an aspirin in a minute.
- h I've got an exam in the autumn, so I'm going to study for the whole summer.

3 Decide if these sentences are correct (✓) or incorrect (✗). Then correct the mistakes.

- 1 She's going to go to shopping this afternoon.
- 2 I go to study harder next year.
- 3 We're not going to get married in June.
- 4 Are they going listen to the concert?
- 5 They're going to have a party in the summer.
- 6 He isn't to going to phone us.

4 You are going on a business trip tonight. Write sentences about your plans using the prompts below.

*I'm going to finish the report.*

- finish report
- buy new shirt
- pack suitcase
- phone taxi
- call Mum
- take out rubbish
- empty fridge

## Present perfect and past simple

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets. Use the present perfect or past simple.

- 1 I \_\_\_\_\_ an opera. (never / see)
- 2 They \_\_\_\_\_ back from their holiday three days ago. (come)
- 3 He \_\_\_\_\_ school when he was five. (start)
- 4 She \_\_\_\_\_ her own photography business. (start)
- 5 We first \_\_\_\_\_ a holiday in Malta last year. (have)
- 6 I \_\_\_\_\_ Spain, but I \_\_\_\_\_ to Ibiza when I was a child. (never / visit; go)

6 Read the job application letter. Choose the correct form, either the present perfect or the past simple.

Dear Sir or Madam,

I (1) *saw / have seen* your advertisement for Tour Guides in yesterday's newspaper. I am very interested and would like to apply. I love travelling and believe I am perfect for this job. When I was a child, my family (2) *travelled / have travelled* a lot around this country, and at the time I (3) *loved / have loved* seeing new places. I still enjoy visiting new countries and am very interested in culture. I (4) *didn't visit / haven't visited* other countries yet, but I plan to in the future.

I (5) *had / have had* several part-time jobs. I (6) *left / have left* school three months ago, after completing my studies, and I am now looking for work. I would be happy to come and talk to you.

I enclose my CV and I look forward to hearing from you,

*Aisha Rafiq*



## Unit 1

### 1.13

- a eleven, twelve, thirteen, fourteen, fifteen ...
- b four, six, eight ...
- c seventh, eighth, ninth ...
- d ninety-nine, ninety-six, ninety-three ...

### 1.14

- a eleven, twelve, thirteen, fourteen, fifteen, sixteen, seventeen ...
- b four, six, eight, ten, twelve ...
- c seventh, eighth, ninth, tenth, eleventh ...
- d ninety-nine, ninety-six, ninety-three, ninety, eighty-seven ...

### 1.17

- 1 A: Good morning, sir.  
B: Morning. My name's Steinbeck.  
A: Ah yes, Mr and Mrs Steinbeck. Two nights.  
B: That's right.  
A: Thank you. And your phone number please?  
B: Sorry?  
A: What's your telephone number?  
B: Ah, 00 44 1845 705 881.  
A: And finally your email address, please.  
B: peter.steinbeck@ble.net  
A: Thank you Mr Steinbeck, Joe?  
C: Yes?  
A: Please show Mr and Mrs Steinbeck their room. Here's their key. Room 224.  
C: No problem.  
B: Thank you.

### 1.18

- 2 A: Excuse me. It's my wife. She needs to see a doctor.  
B: Name?  
A: Sorry?  
B: What's her name?  
A: Morley. Lisa Morley. It's rather urgent.  
B: Can you spell that please?  
A: Yes, M-O-R-L-E-Y. Can she see a doctor?  
B: What's your phone number Mr Morley?  
A: 01202 67110.  
B: Can you repeat that please?  
A: Oh for goodness ... 01202 67110.  
B: And your address?  
A: What? Oh ... er ... 15 Bedford Road, Bedford. B-E-D-F-O-R-D. Now can she see a doctor? She's having a baby!

### 1.20

- 1 A: Mike, hi.  
B: Hey Lauren, how's it going?  
A: Fine thanks. Good to see you.  
B: Yeah. Sit down.  
A: Thanks.  
B: Coffee?  
A: Yes, please.

### 1.21

- 2 A: Doctor Sim, hello.  
B: Hello Doctor James.  
A: This is Doctor Hathaway. She's new here. It's her first day.  
C: Hello.  
B: Pleased to meet you Doctor Hathaway.  
C: Nice to meet you.

### 1.22

- 3 A: Taxi!  
B: Kate?  
A: Yes?  
B: Kate! How are you?  
A: I'm OK, thanks. Um ...  
B: I'm Rob! From school? Remember me?  
A: Ah. Yes. How are you?  
B: Fine. Fine. Kate, Kate Greenfield. It is you?  
A: Er ... Yes. Listen, this is my taxi.  
B: It's good to see you.  
A: Good to see you too Rob, but I ...  
B: Wow. Kate Greenfield.

### 1.23

- 4 A: Excuse me, are you Mr Brown?  
B: No, I'm not.  
A: Sorry. Excuse me, Mr. Brown?  
C: What?  
A: Are you Mr Brown?  
C: No, I'm not.  
A: Sorry!  
D: Excuse me. My name's Frank Brown, and I'm ...  
A: You're Mr. Brown!  
D: Yes, I am.  
A: Mr. Brown, my name's David Jones from ING Electrics.  
D: Oh, hello. Nice to meet you.  
A: Nice to meet you too. Welcome to London. How are you?  
D: I'm fine, thank you. A bit tired.

### 1.24

- 1 My name is Aki Makino and I'm from Tokyo.

### 1.25

- 2 My name is Menahi. I'm from Saudi Arabia.

### 1.26

- 3 My name is Kristina. I come from Russia.

### 1.27

- 4 My name is Hani Al Qubayz. I am from Saudi Arabia, I am from Riyadh. Riyadh is the capital of Saudi Arabia.

### 1.28

- 5 So, my name is Elodie. I come from Switzerland, from Geneva.

### 1.29

- 6 My name is Liliya. I come from the Ukraine.

### 1.30

- 7 My name is Sara Catozzi, I live in Rome.

### 1.31

- 8 I am Maxim. I am from Russia. I am from Moscow.

### 1.32

- 9 I'm Elizabeth. I'm from Germany.

### 1.33

- 10 My name's Amy. I'm from China.

## Unit 2

### 1.37

- 1 A: Well, see you later then.  
B & C: OK, bye.  
B: Your boyfriend's nice. Where's he from?  
C: Moscow.  
B: Oh. Is he Russian?  
C: No, he isn't Russian. He lives in Scotland.  
B: Scotland?  
C: Yes, he's from Moscow, Scotland.  
B: Moscow, Scotland? Where's that?  
C: It's a small place 50 kilometres from Glasgow.  
B: Well, I never.

### 1.38

- 2 A: Good morning.  
B & C: Hello.  
A: Your names please?  
B: I'm Louise Maloney and this is my husband, Scott. We have a reservation.  
A: OK. Can I have some personal details please? Can you spell your surname please?  
B: Of course. That's M-A-L-O-N-E-Y.  
A: Thank you. Where are you from Mrs Maloney?  
B: We're from Paris.  
A: Paris, France.  
C: Oh no, we're not French.  
A: But you're from Paris!  
C: Yes, we are. We're from Paris, Texas in the US. It's near Dallas.  
A: Oh, I see. I'm sorry. Paris, Texas, US.

### 1.39

- 3 A: Next. Name?  
B: I'm sorry?  
A: What's your name?  
B: Miguel Hernández.  
A: Where are you from Mr. Hernández?  
B: Madrid.  
A: Passport?  
B: Sorry, I don't ...  
A: Can I see your passport please?  
B: Oh OK, here you are.  
A: But this is a Mexican passport. Are you Mexican?  
B: Yes, I am.  
A: But you come from Madrid.  
B: Yes, that's right. Not Madrid in Spain, Madrid in Mexico.



### 1.43

- 1 A: Hello, I have a meeting with Mrs Bristow, the Commercial Director at 4.15.  
 B: Your name please?  
 A: Stuart Barnes from LDT Communications.  
 B: One moment please. Mrs Bristow? Mr Barnes is here to see you.

### 1.44

- 2 A: OK let's see ... The London train goes from platform four at 3.20. What's the time now?  
 B: It's only 2.45. Would you like to have a coffee before you go? Look, there's a café over there.  
 A: Yeah good idea. The coffee on trains is always terrible.

### 1.45

- 3 A: Do you want to go to the cinema on Friday?  
 B: Yes OK. What time's the film?  
 A: It's on at 6.00.  
 B: Oh, I go to the gym at 6.00.  
 A: OK, what about 8.30?  
 B: Yes, that's fine.

### 1.46

Well, my Spanish day is different from my English day. First of all, in Spain I get up at about 8.00 in the morning, a bit later than in England. And lunch ... Well in England I eat at 12.30, but in Barcelona that's very early, I normally eat at about 2.00. We have dinner later in Spain. A normal time to have dinner at home is 9.00. Finally, I go to bed at a different time when I'm in Barcelona. Normally about midnight. Yeah, I normally go to bed at 12.00 in Spain.

### 1.54

- 1 A: Excuse me? Um ... hello? Excuse me?  
 B: Yes?  
 A: Yes. Hello. When is the next bus to the airport?  
 B: To where?  
 A: To the airport.  
 B: ...  
 A: What? Excuse me? What?  
 B: A quarter past five.  
 A: Five fifteen. Thank you.

### 1.55

- 2 A: Excuse me?  
 B: Yeah?  
 A: This bus goes to the city centre, right?  
 B: Yep.  
 A: What time?  
 B: Two fifty.  
 A: Two fifteen?  
 B: No, two fifty. Ten to three.  
 A: Great, thanks.  
 B: You're welcome.

### 1.56

- 3 A: The 10.30 to Hamilton is now at bay 6. The 10.45 to Ottawa is now at bay 8. The 11.10 to London is now at bay 9. The 11.15 to New York is now at bay 11.  
 B: What time is it?  
 C: Ten thirty.  
 B: Um, half past ten. Is there time to have a coffee?  
 C: Our bus is in fifteen minutes. Yeah, I think so.  
 B: OK.

### Unit 3

#### 1.60

- 1 It's yellow and black.  
 2 It's green, blue and black.  
 3 It's red, green and blue with a white line.  
 4 It's green, blue and black with a thin red line.

#### 1.62

- 1 A: What's your name?  
 B: Hilary Thomson.  
 A: Where are you from Hilary?  
 B: I'm from Edinburgh.  
 A: And do you live in Edinburgh now?  
 B: No, I live in Madrid in Spain.  
 A: Do you have a family clan?  
 B: Yes, we're part of the Campbell clan.  
 A: The Campbells ... OK, do you have a clan tartan?  
 B: Yes, it's green, blue and black with a thin red line.  
 A: And do you wear a kilt on special occasions?  
 B: Well no, personally I don't. I think it's more typical for men to wear kilts. My father and brother wear kilts for weddings, New Year and maybe even for international football matches.  
 A: Do you think clans are important to Scottish people now?  
 B: Well, yes, I think they're important. For me it's something special about being Scottish.

#### 1.63

- 2 A: What's your name?  
 B: Gordon Liddle.  
 A: And where are you from?  
 B: Glasgow.  
 A: Do you live there now?  
 B: No, I live near Dundee and work at Dundee University.  
 A: Do you have a family clan?  
 B: No, I don't.  
 A: So do you wear a kilt on special occasions?  
 B: Yes, I do. I wear a kilt for weddings and for special dinners and parties.  
 A: Do you think clans are important to Scottish people now?  
 B: No, I don't. I think it's important for people in the US and Australia with Scottish family, but I don't think it's important for most Scottish people.

### 1.67

- 1 Ugh, dogs? I really hate them. They're awful animals.  
 2 We have a dog, Jupiter. He's sixteen years old, he's intelligent, friendly and we love him.  
 3 I like dogs. I like all animals, except cats. I don't like cats. They're very unfriendly.  
 4 My sister loves dogs. Her dog's name is Rafis. Personally, I don't like him very much. He's dirty and really stupid too.  
 5 I love my dog. Her name is Princess. She's beautiful. The problem is ... she doesn't like me very much.  
 6 We live in a really small house, and we don't have cats or dogs. We would like a dog. We love them. But we don't have space.

### 1.69

- 1 A: Is this your first visit to Scotland?  
 B: Yes, it is. I'm from Romania.  
 A: Romania? What part of Romania?  
 B: I'm from a small town near the capital.  
 A: Really? My cousin works in Budapest.  
 B: Budapest is in Hungary, not Romania.  
 A: Oh. Sorry.  
 B: It's OK. I live near Bucharest, not Budapest.  
 A: OK.

### 1.70

- 2 A: Hello.  
 B: Hi Jane! Is this little Michael?  
 A: Yes, isn't he big now!  
 B: He is! How old is he?  
 A: He's two.  
 B: Two? When's his birthday?  
 A: In July.

### 1.71

- 3 A: So, what's Alan like?  
 B: Oh, he's very nice, and intelligent.  
 A: So?  
 B: Well, he still lives with his parents.  
 A: His parents? How old is he?  
 B: Thirty-eight.  
 A: Oh.

### 1.72

- 4 A: How's the new job?  
 B: I like it.  
 A: What time do you start?  
 B: Early. Seven o'clock in the morning.  
 A: Seven o'clock? Why do you start so early?  
 B: Because I finish work at half past three.  
 A: Oh.

### 1.73

Nicole, Switzerland  
 I come from a small family. I just have one brother.



# Audioscript

## 1.74

Carmen, Spain

I am from a big family. Well I think it is a big family nowadays because we are five members in the family. I have one sister and one brother and my brother is older than me and my sister is younger than me. So I am in the middle.

## 1.75

Martin, Czech Republic

My mother, she has two sisters so I have lots of cousins and uncles, other relations.

## 1.76

Dor, Scotland

I'm from a small family. I have one brother.

## 1.77

Bea, England

I'm from quite a big family ... I've got one sister but I've got lots and lots of cousins.

## 1.78

Ena, Bosnia

My family is very small. I don't have lots of people in my family. I have one brother. His name is Ismar.

## Unit 4

### 2.07

A: Hi. So you're Beth, right?

B: Yup.

A: Hi, I'm Clare. Welcome!

B: Thanks!

A: Is it your first time in San Francisco?

B: Yes, it is.

A: OK, let me show you round. So, this is the kitchen ...

B: Nice cooker! I love cooking.

A: Great, we really like cooking too. There are two bathrooms. This one has a shower and the one at the end has a bath.

B: OK.

A: Our bedroom is here and this is the living room! You'll be OK sleeping on the sofa?

B: Yeah fine. Well this is CouchSurfing!

A: Right, OK, well there's a lamp down there by the sofa.

B: OK, that's great. Now I'd really like to cook you guys a meal or something ...

### 2.09

1 Kedgeree is an English-Indian dish. It's made of rice and sometimes includes fish and eggs.

2 Maple syrup is a type of liquid made from the sweet juice of the maple tree. Originally made by Native Americans it is now a typical part of breakfast in Canada and the US. People usually have it with pancakes, a kind of flat cake.

3 Ackee is a kind of special fruit from Jamaica. It's red on the outside, and yellow with big black seeds on the inside. A traditional Jamaican breakfast has ackee and a kind of fish, called saltfish.

4 A beskuit or rusks is a kind of biscuit from South Africa. It's hard and dry, and people often eat it with a cup of tea.

### 2.13

1 A: Good afternoon. Welcome to the Holiday Hotel.

B: Hello. Do you have any single rooms?

A: Just a minute ... Yes we do. Would you like a smoking or a non-smoking room?

B: I'd like a non-smoking room please. I don't smoke.

A: OK. Sign here please.

B: Thank you.

### 2.14

2 A: Ah, Mr. Phelps. Welcome to Chicago. Is this your first visit?

B: Yes, it is.

A: Please sit down. Would you like a coffee?

B: No, thank you.

A: Are you sure? We have a very good coffee machine.

B: Thank you very much, but I'm fine.

A: OK then. Would you like to meet my colleagues?

B: Yes, please. That would be great.

### 2.15

3 A: Hello.

B: Hi. Come in, come in. How are you?

A: Fine, thanks. Here, this is for you.

B: What a lovely plant! Thank you.

A: You're welcome.

B: Please, have a seat in the living room. Would you like something to drink?

A: Yes, please. What do you have?

B: Well, there's ...

## Unit 5

### 2.18

OK, if you look at the chart here, you'll see it's about world film production. Every year, the average number of films in the world is 3,975. Yes, 3,975 new films are made every year. The majority of these films are not from Hollywood, the United States or even North America. They are from Asia. Asia makes 67% of the world's films. North America in fact only produces 10% of world films every year. And Europe produces 17% of world films every year. Again, this is more films than South America (only 3.5%) and Africa (2.5%), but also more than North America. As you can see, world cinema is not only Hollywood, it's much more.

### 2.24

1 No, I never watch comedy programmes. They're just not funny. I hate comedy. I don't often watch TV anyway.

### 2.25

2 Ooh yes, what I really like are horror films and, um, those, er, thrillers. I watch films in bed because they're always on late and we have a TV in the bedroom.

### 2.26

3 No, I don't often watch the news. I don't like it and anyway my husband is always home before me and ... um ... he just ... he really only watches sport.

### 2.27

4 Yes, I do. I really like those documentaries about animals – the photography is fantastic. Oh and I sometimes watch documentaries about history too – yeah, I like them.

### 2.28

5 Mm, I don't watch a lot of sport, but I like tennis. Oh and I sometimes watch football with people from work. Oh and the Olympics – I love the Olympics.

### 2.34

1 A: Good afternoon.

B: Yes, hello.

A: Can I help you?

B: Yes, please. How much does this DVD player cost?

A: Just a minute. It's £69.

B: OK, I'll take it.

### 2.35

2 C: Can I help you?

B: Yes, where are the ... um ... horror films?

C: Horror films? Old or new ones?

B: The old horror films, please. Classic old films.

C: Over there, next to the world cinema section.

B: Thanks very much. Can I pay by credit card?

C: Yes.

### 2.36

3 B: Excuse me? Where's the popcorn?

D: There isn't any popcorn. We have crisps.

B: OK. Four bags of crisps then. And these soft drinks please.

D: That's £6.80. Would you like a bag?

B: Yes, please.

D: Here you are.

### 2.37

B: Hello? Hello? I have everything!

E: Hi.

B: OK, look ... a new DVD player, some horror films and some crisps and drinks. Everything is ready. What's the matter?

E: The television ... It's broken.

### 2.39

Leslie, Switzerland

I don't go to the cinema that often. Maybe once a month or it depends a little on the season because sometimes in winter there are many good films and ... yeah ... but I don't go to the cinema regularly.



## 2.40

Ryusuke, Japan

To improve my English I go to cinema in Oxford maybe twice a month.

## 2.41

Berangere, France

Like several times a month. Yeah, like maybe, yeah, two or three times a month.

## 2.42

Key, Hong Kong

Maybe once a month. It depends whether they have some good movies on show but mainly we watch some western movies.

## 2.43

Gloria, Ghana

Once every two months. Not really.

## 2.44

Mireille, US

I sometimes go to the cinema. I go probably once a month, once every two months and it depends, on what movie I see. I sometimes go and see action, I sometimes see comedies.

## Unit 6

### 2.46

1 I work in a primary school with eight year olds. The best thing about this job is working with children. You can make a real *difference to their lives*. Oh, and the holidays are good too. The worst thing? Some of the parents!

### 2.47

2 I work for a telephone company in a big office. The best thing is the people I work with – they're really nice. And I have a company car. But my boss is very strict – we can't make personal phone calls or use email.

### 2.48

3 I work in a laboratory for an international company. The best thing about my job is the money! The good salary means I can buy things I want. And I have a great pension plan. The bad part? The hours. I often work 10 hours a day.

### 2.49

4 I work for a sports club in the city centre. I like my job but the pay isn't really very good. The best thing about my job is the extras. I *have free car-parking, I can use all the sports facilities and we get free lunches in the club's restaurant.*

### 2.55

The first ... library

The Great Library of Alexandria was the first, or one of the first, libraries in the world. It was founded in Alexandria, Egypt in the 3rd century BC. There weren't any books in the library in the beginning; the information was on long pieces of paper, called scrolls.

## 2.56

The first ... distance learning programme

The University of London is an important institution in the United Kingdom. It was the first university with a distance learning programme. The programme started in 1858. The university now has a global community of students in 180 countries.

## 2.59

- 1 A: Right, can we finish quickly please?  
B: Yes, yes, I agree.  
C: I'm sorry, but we have a lot of things to talk about.  
A: It's a quarter to one. It's time for lunch soon.  
B: I'd like to go at one o'clock please. I need to send some important emails.  
C: OK, OK, the first thing is the annual sales figures. Now, we need to look at these very carefully.

## 2.60

- 2 A: Ah, good, you're here.  
B: Yes, you wanted to see me?  
A: Yes, could you close the door?  
B: OK, sure.  
A: Do you know why you're here?  
B: Um ... no. Is everything fine with my work?  
A: Yes.  
B: I don't understand then.  
A: Good news. You have a new job. Would you like to be senior manager?  
B: Wow. Yes, I would! Senior manager. That's ... that's great!  
A: Well done.

## 2.61

- 3 A: Can you take a photo of us?  
B: Oh, yes. Of course.  
A: OK, OK everyone! It's photo time. Everyone look at the camera please! Can you all look at the camera please?  
B: Say cheese.  
C: Cheese!  
D: I'd like a copy of that photo.  
E: Can I have a copy too please?  
A: OK, OK.

## 2.63

Matteo, Italy

I think my favourite teacher in high school in Italy was my ... my ancient Greek teacher.

## 2.64

Eva, Switzerland

A teacher I remember from school was my German teacher. She was a teacher who was very interested in young people and was really interested in hearing what young people think, young people's opinions and it was very interesting.

## 2.65

Carmen, Spain

My favourite teacher was a woman that I have when I was fifteen years old. She was my mathematics teacher. She was really good. She explained everything really good and mathematics was easy for me with her.

## 2.66

Christina, Germany

I had a very good teacher in history class. His lessons were inspiring. It was my favourite class.

## 2.67

Bea, England

My favourite teacher was my primary school teacher when I was eight years old. His name was Mr Etherington.

## Unit 7

### 3.01

In 1851 Paul Reuter, who later started Reuters press agency, used the telegraph to send news for the first time.

In 1920 Station 8MK in Detroit presented the first radio news programme.

The BBC World Service - originally called the BBC Empire Service - started in 1932 and in 1938 it started its first foreign language service in Arabic.

In 1962 AT&T launched Telstar into orbit. It was the first active communications satellite.

In 1969 more than 600 million people watched Neil Armstrong - the first man on the moon.

In 1980 the Columbus Dispatch in Ohio, US was the first newspaper to start a digital edition on the internet.

In the last part of the 20<sup>th</sup> century it was possible to watch news all day. In 1980 Ted Turner created the Cable News Network (CNN) - the first TV station to broadcast news 24 hours, 7 days a week. In 1996 the first 24-hour news station in Arabic, Al Jazeera, started in Doha, Qatar.

### 3.11

- 1 A: Good morning, Daily Post Newspaper. Claudia speaking.  
B: Hello, is the reporter Daniella Hammond there?  
A: No, I'm sorry she's out. Can I take a message?  
B: No, thank you. I'll call back.  
A: OK then. Goodbye.

### 3.12

- 2 A: Good morning, Daily Post Newspaper. Claudia speaking.  
B: Good morning. Can I speak to Daniella Hammond please?  
A: Certainly sir. Who's calling?  
B: A friend. I have some information for her.  
A: Just one moment please ... I'm sorry. Miss Hammond is busy just now. Can she call you later?  
B: I'll wait.  
A: OK, hold please.



# Audioscript

## 3.13

- 3 A: Hello?  
B: Hello. Is that Daniella Hammond?  
A: Yes, it is.  
B: Are you the Daily Post reporter, Daniella Hammond?  
A: Yes. Who's calling, please?  
B: I have some information for you. Very important information.  
A: Just a second, I'll get a pen.  
B: No! I can't talk now. Meet me by the phone box at Sunshine Square tonight. Half past eight.  
A: But ...  
B: Be there.

## 3.14

- 4 A: Hello? Hello?  
B: Hello ...  
A: I can't hear you. There's a storm ...  
B: The information ... very important ... photos ...  
A: Sorry? What?  
B: Look ... in the trees. There's an envelope. In the envelope are some photos.  
A: What? What is in the photos?  
B: They show ... they show ...

## 3.16

Haruna, Japan  
I think as almost all of the people I love sunny days, I love sunny weather because if ... uh ... if it rains, or if it's cloudy or like windy, or snowy, I don't want to go out.

## 3.17

Maida, Switzerland  
I like it when it's sunny before all. I obviously prefer when it's warm and not too cold.

## 3.18

Al-Mutaseem, Saudi Arabia  
Um ... well the weather in ... uh ... in Jeddah is ... uh ... always hot and ... uh ... has a lot of humidity.

## 3.19

Mireille, US  
Um, let's see ... I love ... I like sunny weather but I don't like it when it is too hot. Um, I like it sunny and cool ... um ... and so I like the English weather for that. In California I like it when it's sunny also but not too hot, but sunny and warm enough to go to the beach.

## Unit 8

### 3.26

A: This week I'm in Hong Kong to see a very unusual form of public transport: the Mid-Levels Escalator system. I'm standing at the top of about 800 metres of escalators, and it's absolutely impossible to see the bottom from here. Every day thousands of people use these escalators to go to work. It's 8am here in Hong Kong and right now the escalators are going down, but at ten o'clock

they change direction. As I'm standing here, literally hundreds of people are coming in at the entrance and onto the steps ... Excuse me?

- B: Yes?  
A: Do you use the escalators every day?  
B: Yes, that's right; I use them to go down to my office in the morning and then I come back at about 7pm on my way home.  
A: And what do you think of the escalators?  
B: Oh they're great. They save me about an hour.

### 3.32

1 Hi, yes it's me. Listen I'm at the airport. No, fine, fine. But my bags aren't here. I know, and I have a meeting in 30 minutes!

### 3.33

- 2 A: Well, this is goodbye.  
B: Yes. Goodbye.  
A: I ... I love you. Call me.  
B: I promise. Goodbye. Goodbye.

### 3.34

- 3 A: Bruce?  
B: Jerry?  
A: Bruce! It is you! Wow! Great. Great to see you man!  
B: Aw, great to see you too!

### 3.35

- 4 A: What time is it now?  
B: It's ten past six.  
A: What time is our plane?  
B: Twelve thirty. Another six hours and twenty minutes to wait.

### 3.36

5 No, he isn't here. Did he say he was on the ten o'clock flight from Dublin? He did. But he isn't here. I don't know what to do. I just don't know what to do!

### 3.41

- A: So, the map says there's a subway station near here.  
B: Can we just ask someone?  
A: No, no. I think I know ... If we're here...  
B: Excuse me!  
C: Yes?  
B: Is there a subway near here? We want to go to the British Museum.  
C: You mean the Tube? Er ... yes. You ... er ... go straight on. Then turn right. The underground is there. Take the Central line for the British Museum.  
B: Thank you! Easy. You see?  
A: I knew.  
B: This isn't the Central line.  
A: What?  
B: I said, this isn't the Central line. We're going the wrong way.  
A: No ... oh ... wait a minute. You're right. We can get off at the next stop.  
B: What stop is this?  
A: Just a minute ... I ...  
B: Can we ask someone?

- A: No, no, it's all right. I ...  
B: Excuse me!  
D: Yes?  
B: How can we get to the British Museum?  
D: Ah yes. It's easy.  
B: Thank you, thank you.  
D: Go upstairs and change to the Central line. Then go two stops, to Holborn station. The museum is there.  
B: Thank you.  
D: You're welcome.  
A: Thank you.  
B: Oh, stop it. You're just jealous.  
A: No I'm not!

## Unit 9

### 3.44

- A: Here, look at this.  
B: What ... what is it?  
A: It's an okapi. Have you ever seen one of these?  
B: No, I haven't. It looks like ... like a mixture of a horse, a dog and a zebra.  
A: Min. Yes. It's from the north part of the Congo, Africa. There aren't many okapis in the world now.  
B: Have you been to Africa?  
A: Yes, a long time ago. I've never seen this animal before. Not in real life.  
B: Oh.  
A: What about this one? Have you seen one of these?  
B: Yes, I have. It's a lionfish, I think, from Australia?  
A: Very good.  
B: So ... what now?  
A: Well, have you used the Encyclopedia of Life website before?  
B: No, I haven't.  
A: OK. I want you to go on it and find information about one of these animals. Then write your report on one of these animals for tomorrow.  
B: Is that the homework?  
A: Yes, it is.  
B: Thanks.  
A: No problem. I'll go and see how the other students are doing.

### 3.48

- 1 When my sister got married she had a beautiful one on her hands.
- 2 I've got one on my arm, from when I was a soldier.
- 3 I've got one on my shoulder. It's a blue dolphin.
- 4 I'm a Maori from New Zealand. I've got a traditional 'Ta Moko' on my back.
- 5 Ugh. I hate them. My son's got a big star on his leg.

### 3.49

- 1 a car
- 2 two brothers
- 3 a friend from England
- 4 a computer
- 5 a big family
- 6 a friend with a tattoo



### 3.54

People started using buttons around 2000 BC in the south of Asia. The first ones were for decoration.

The first hats probably came from Asia, and were used to protect people from the sun and the rain. The earliest images of people in hats are from Greece in the year 500 BC.

The word sock comes from the Latin 'soccus', a type of ancient Roman shoe. But the first people to use socks were the Egyptians – in around 400 BC.

Clothes didn't have pockets until about 1500. Before then, people carried money and small items in bags.

People started wearing blue jeans in the 1860s in San Francisco. Originally people used them as thick protective trousers for work.

In 1917 a company called Keds in the United States invented the first sports shoes. These shoes were not all white like modern ones. They were black and brown, like other men's shoes of the time.

People started wearing T-shirts at the end of the 19<sup>th</sup> century. In 1939 clothes companies started printing words on T-shirts for promotion. They used the first one to advertise the film *The Wizard of Oz*.

### 3.55

- 1 A: What happened?  
B: Hello. You fell down.  
A: I fell down?  
B: Yes. But you're OK now.  
A: Oh ... My leg hurts.  
B: Don't worry; you haven't broken your leg.  
A: I've got an awful headache.  
B: Yes, that's normal.  
A: Where am I?  
B: In the ambulance, madam. We're going to the hospital.  
A: Oh ... OK. Can I have some water?  
B: Yes, of course. Here you are.

### 3.56

- 2 A: Excuse me, where's Dr Hathaway's office?  
B: Go straight on. It's the second door on the left.  
A: Thank you.  
C: Come in!  
A: Hello, er, Dr Hathaway?  
C: Yes, hello, Mr Fisher. What's the problem?  
A: Well, I have a terrible stomach ache.  
C: Really?  
A: But not now. It comes and goes.  
C: Hmm. Can you sit down? Are you taking that medicine I gave you?  
A: Yes, I am.  
C: Maybe the medicine is too strong.

## Unit 10

### 3.60

- 1 I'm interested in history so I'm going to visit the old bits of Malta. The churches, castles, museums and that kind of stuff.

### 3.61

- 2 I'm not here for tourism, I'm here for work. We're going to have a conference here next spring and I'm organising it.

### 3.62

- 3 We're here with the children, and they aren't going to want to see the cultural things. We're going to visit the water park and the beaches.

### 3.63

- 4 My friend and I love scuba diving. There are some amazing underwater caves here in Malta and we're going to swim in them.

### 3.64

- 5 We're going to get married there. We live in London but my girlfriend's family is Maltese. We're going to have a big party at a restaurant in the capital city. It's next to the sea and it's a great place for a wedding.

### 3.65

- 6 No, we're not going for tourism. We're making a television show about ancient Rome, and we're going to film some scenes in Malta because the architecture is so great.

### 3.66

- 7 I'm going to learn English there this summer. There are many English schools.

### 3.73

- 1 A: What did you do in class yesterday?  
B: We played a game.  
A: Really? What game?  
B: I can't remember the name. The teacher wrote some categories on the board.  
A: What do you mean, categories?  
B: Well, she wrote Animal, and City, and Verb and some other ones. Then she said a letter and we had to write a word for each category that begins with the letter.  
A: Oh. So ... for example ...  
B: For example she wrote S and we had to write an animal that begins with S ...  
A: Snake.  
B: Yeah, and a city ...  
A: San Francisco.  
B: Right, and that was the game. The team that finished first shouted "stop".  
A: Sounds fun.  
B: Yeah, it was fun.

### 3.74

- 2 In this game, you put several small objects, maybe around twenty, on the table and you cover them. Then you uncover the objects and let the people look at them for one minute. Then you cover the objects again. Each person writes down the things they remember. The person who remembers the most things wins.

### 3.75

- 3 OK, is everyone listening? Are you listening? Right, we're going to play a game. I'm thinking of a person, a famous person. You need to ask me questions to find out who it is. And I can only answer 'yes' or 'no'. So, for example, you ask, 'Are you a man?' and I answer, 'Yes, I am.' And you ask, 'Are you English?' and I answer 'No, I'm not.' And we continue. You can only ask a maximum of twenty questions to find out who I am. Ready? Who wants to ask the first question?

### 3.77

- 1 A: Hello, I'm your tour guide for the day. Is this your first time in Egypt?  
B: Yes, it is.  
A: What would you like to visit?  
B: Um ... I don't know. What do you suggest?  
A: We could see the pyramids. Everybody likes the pyramids.  
B: Oh, yes. Let's see the pyramids. When do they open?  
A: They open at 8 in the morning. They close at 4pm.  
B: OK.

### 3.78

- 2 A: And yes, so this is Red Square.  
B: Ooh, very nice. Where is the Kremlin?  
A: There, on the right. It's those buildings. We could go in and visit ...  
B: Are there long queues for tickets?  
A: Yes.  
B: Oh, no thanks then. We can walk around here, it's fine.

### 3.79

- 3 A: Welcome to Turkey. Have you visited Istanbul before?  
B: Yes, I have, but only for business. This is my first tourist visit.  
A: Oh, good. What would you like to see?  
B: I think it has to be the Hagia Sophia, don't you?  
A: Oh yes, of course. Why don't we go to your hotel first and you can leave your bags. Then we can go and see the sights.  
B: Good idea. Let's go.



# Irregular verbs

Infinitive	Past simple	Past participle	Infinitive	Past simple	Past participle
be	was/were	been	lie	lay	lain
beat	beat	beaten	light	lit	lit
become	became	become	lose	lost	lost
begin	began	begun	make	made	made
bend	bent	bent	mean	meant /ment/	meant /ment/
bet	bet	bet	meet	met	met
bite	bit	bitten	must	had to	(had to)
blow	blew	blown	pay	paid	paid
break	broke	broken	put	put	put
bring	brought /brɔ:t/	brought /brɔ:t/	read	read /red/	read /red/
build /bild/	built /bɪlt/	built /bɪlt/	ride	rode	ridden
burn	burnt /burned	burnt /burned	ring	rang	rung
burst	burst	burst	rise	rose	risen
buy /baɪ/	bought /bɔ:t/	bought /bɔ:t/	run	ran	run
can	could /kʊd/	(been able)	say	said /sed/	said /sed/
catch	caught /kɔ:t/	caught /kɔ:t/	see	saw /sɔ:/	seen
choose	chose	chosen	sell	sold	sold
come	came	come	send	sent	sent
cost	cost	cost	set	set	set
cut	cut	cut	shake	shook	shaken
deal /di:l/	dealt /delt/	dealt /delt/	shine	shone	shone
dig	dug	dug	shoot	shot	shot
do	did	done	show	showed	shown
draw	drew	drawn	shrink	shrank	shrunk
dream	dreamt/dreamed	dreamt/dreamed	shut	shut	shut
drink	drank	drunk	sing	sang	sung
drive	drove	driven	sink	sank	sunk
eat	ate	eaten	sit	sat	sat
fall	fell	fallen	sleep	slept	slept
feed	fed	fed	slide	slid	slid
feel	felt	felt	smell	smelt/smelled	smelt/smelled
fight	fought /fɔ:t/	fought /fɔ:t/	speak	spoke	spoken
find	found	found	spell	spelt/spelled	spelt/spelled
fly	flew	flown	spend	spent	spent
forget	forgot	forgotten	spill	spilt/spilled	spilt/spilled
forgive	forgave	forgiven	split	split	split
freeze	froze	frozen	spoil	spoil/spoiled	spoil/spoiled
get	got	got	spread	spread	spread
give	gave	given	stand	stood	stood
go	went	gone/been	steal	stole	stolen
grow	grew	grown	stick	stuck	stuck
hang	hung/hanged	hung/hanged	swear	swore	sworn
have	had	had	swell	swelled	swollen/swelled
hear	heard /hɜ:d/	heard /hɜ:d/	swim	swam	swum
hide	hid	hidden	take	took /tɒk/	taken
hit	hit	hit	teach	taught /tɔ:t/	taught /tɔ:t/
hold	held	held	tear	tore	torn
hurt /hɜ:t/	hurt /hɜ:t/	hurt /hɜ:t/	tell	told	told
keep	kept	kept	think	thought /θɔ:t/	thought /θɔ:t/
kneel	kneelt/kneeled	kneelt/kneeled	throw	threw	thrown
know	knew /nju:/	known	understand	understood	understood
lay	laid	laid	wake	woke	woken
lead	led	led	wear	wore /wɔ:/	worn
learn	learnt	learnt	win	won /wɒn/	won /wɒn/
leave	left	left	write	wrote	written
lend	lent	lent			
let	let	let			



Macmillan Education  
Between Towns Road, Oxford OX4 3PP  
A division of Macmillan Publishers Limited  
Companies and representatives throughout the world

ISBN 978-0-230-03291-0

Text © Lindsay Clandfield, Kate Pickering & Amanda Jeffries 2010  
Design and illustration © Macmillan Publishers Limited 2010

First published 2010

All rights reserved; no part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, transmitted in any form, or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the publishers.

Original design by Barbara Mercer and Katie Stephens  
Page layout by eMC Design Limited  
Illustrated by Jonathan Burton, Matthew Hams, Celia Hart, Piers Sanford, Peter Harper and eMC Design Limited  
Picture research by Sally Cole, Perseverance Works Limited  
Cover design by Barbara Mercer  
Cover photos (front, spine, back): by permission of the Museum of the History of Science, University of Oxford/Keiko Ikeuchi.

#### Authors' acknowledgements:

First and foremost we would like to thank Rafael Alarcon-Gaeta and the editorial and design teams at Macmillan: Nick Sheard, Stephanie Parker, Barbara Mercer, Sùg Vatland, Sarah O'Driscoll, Claire Sparkes, Carole Hughes, Penny Ashfield, Hazel Barrett and Georgina Gilbert. We would also like to thank Jo Greig, Matt Kay and the rest of the marketing team. There are of course many other people whose efforts have helped to make a book that we are really proud of, in particular Robert Campbell, Rob Metcalf and Matt Beesley for their work on the eWorkbook. Lindsay would especially like to thank his family and friends for encouraging him and putting up with him throughout the writing of this book. Kate would like to dedicate this book to Angus, Rhona and Maya for their love and support and for surviving the experience.

The author and publishers would like to thank all the teachers and consultants who have piloted and reviewed the material. Particular thanks go to the following people: Andrea Córdova, Susana Flores (Anglo Multimedia School of English, Haedo, Buenos Aires, Argentina); Ma. Cristina Maggi, Ma. Cristina Buero de Chinton (Friends' School of English, Adrogué, Buenos Aires, Argentina); Mirta Zampini, Aldana Anchorena, Elizabeth Rainieri, Ma. Soledad D. Mangiarotti, Pamela Sabrina Pecorelli (LECI, Haedo, Buenos Aires, Argentina); Alejandro Jorge Listraoi (Cultural Inglesa de Palermo, Ciudad Autónoma de Buenos Aires, Argentina); Lilian Tricovitch Leventhal (Potential/ Colegio I.L. Peretz, São Paulo, Brazil); Ana Maria Miranda (Cultura Inglesa Ribeirão Preto, (Ribeirão Preto, Brazil); Magali de Moraes Menti (FACCAT - Escola Municipal Lauro Rodrigues, Porto Alegre, Brazil); Simone Sarmiento (PUCRS, Porto Alegre, Brazil); Laura Lee Lehto (Cultura Inglesa, Fortaleza, Brazil); Viviane Cristine Silva Grossklauss, Analice Sandovetti (Cultura Inglesa Jundiá, Jundiá, Brazil); Celia Aguiar de Almeida Costa (Cultura Inglesa de Juiz de Fora, Brazil); Corina Celia Machado Correa (Associação Alunni - São Paulo, Brazil); Jane Godwin (The Four, São Carlos, Brazil); Caroline Tombia (The Holy Family School, Jesuete, Egypt); Amany Shawkey, Heidi Omara (Macmillan Publishers Ltd, Egypt); Caroline Franz, Dana Jelinkova (MVHS Muenchner Volkshochschule, Munich, Germany); Irene Rodriguez, Haydee Gutierrez Palafox, Antonio Morales de la Barrera, Javier Ramos de Hoyos (The Anglo Mexican Foundation, Mexico City, Mexico); Viviana Caruso de Curtius (freelance author and consultant, Mexico City, Mexico); Emma Dominguez (Academic Studies Manager, The Anglo Mexican Foundation, Mexico City, Mexico); Katarzyna Rogalska-Gajewska (Archibald, Warsaw, Poland); Małgorzata Wóźniak, Dorota Pachwiczewicz, Agnieszka Kilanowska (Centrum Językowe 'Euroclub', Gdańsk, Poland); Fabiola Georgiana Hosu (Little London School and Nursery School,

Dimitrie Cantemir University, Bucharest, Romania); Lydia B. Korzheva (Diplomatic Academy, Moscow, Russia); Ludmila A. Pokrovskaya (Russian Academy of Foreign Trade, Moscow, Russia); Olga S. Petrisheva (Moscow State University of International Relations, Moscow, Russia); Albina Valieva (The International Language School 'Denis School', Moscow, Russia); Karen Dyer, Cathy Harris, Frank Hodgkins (International House, Madrid, Spain); Carlos Trueba (F.O.I. Villaverde, Madrid, Spain); Patricia Plaza Arregui (F.O.I. Malaga, Spain); Maria Esther Álvarez Rico (F.O.I. Sagunto, Valencia, Spain); Bureu Tezean Ünal (Bilgi University, Istanbul, Turkey); Dr. E. Ilke Buyukduman (Ozyegin University, Istanbul, Turkey); Sarah Shaw (The British Council, Chiang Mai, Thailand); Aomhoo Burutphakdee (Payap University, Chiang Mai, Thailand); Claudia Edwards (London School of English, London, UK); Sally Jones (Regent Oxford, Oxford, UK); Katherine Griggs (Community English School, Oxfordshire Adult Learning, Oxford, UK)

A special thank you to Jackie Hallsall, Sarah Paterson and all the staff and students at Eckersley, Oxford and Regent, Oxford for all their help with Global voices.

The authors and publishers would like to thank the following for providing information about themselves to be included in the book: Peter Menzel, Alan Hammans, Miguel Angel Nieto Baños, Laura Clonic.

The authors and publishers would like to thank the following for permission to reproduce their photographs:

AKG Images pp130(d), 130(b), AKG-images/E. Lessing p130(m); Alamy/Arco Images GmbH p102(b), Alamy/J. Arnold Images pp18, 123(r), Alamy/M. Bassett p47(d), Alamy/R. Bird p43(r), Alamy/T. Birdsall p109(tmr), Alamy/E. Camhi p126(j), Alamy/W. Connert p92, Alamy/R. Cummins p35(b), Alamy/M. Dwyer p24, Alamy/T. Eckert p37(m), Alamy/J. Fernandez p104(b), Alamy/Focus Japan p115(r), Alamy/United Archives GmbH p31(m), Alamy/T. Foster p43(tm), Alamy/A. Fox p23(m), Alamy/D. R. Frazier Photolibrary, Inc. p90 Alamy/T. Gander p13(m), Alamy/C. Gay pp11(r), 109(d), 109(rtm), Alamy/E. Gerald pp21, 58(br inset), Alamy/D. Gowans p33(t), Alamy Robert Harding Picture Library Ltd p123(m), Alamy/A. Holt p116(tr), Alamy/Jam World Images p116(tm), Alamy/D. Jenkins p36(tm), Alamy/H. Jones p116(b), Alamy/Lebrecht Music and Arts Photo Library p121(r), Alamy/S. May p11(tr), Alamy/R. McGinnis p84(r), Alamy/Pictorial Press Ltd p22(b), Alamy/Picture Partners p74(m), Alamy/The Print Collector p130(m), Alamy/Profimedia International s.r.o. p102(br), Alamy/PSL Images p62(m), Alamy/Bert de Ruiter p26(m), Alamy/H. Rogers p25(l), Alamy/A. Segre p13(d), Alamy/P. Scholey p116(m), Alamy/P. Springett p34(br), Alamy/J. Sylvester p43(b), Alamy/TravelStock Collection/H. Sykes p33(b), Alamy/Unity Mirror/Mirrorpix p36(bm), Alamy/A. Kowalsky p11(br), Alamy/G. Wrona p71(b); Ancient Art & Architecture/C. M. Dixon p37; Bananastock pp67, 118(m), 118(m); Miguel Angel Nieto Baños pp103(m), 103(b); Brand X pp12(l), 23(m), 36(d), 44(g,k), 90(b), 118(d,m,h,bm); Comstock p44(c), 44(d); Corbis/M. Altmann p37(m), Corbis/Atlantide Phototravel p62(m), Corbis/A. Benedetti p112, Corbis/E. Bock p82(tr), Corbis/D. Brabyn p58(lm inset), Corbis/P. Björkegren/Etsa p82(d), Corbis/W. Perry Conway/p36(br), Corbis/R. Dowling p84(m), Corbis/The Gallery Collection p130(m), Corbis/R. Jack p31(b), Corbis/J. Roberts p37(m), Corbis/E. Kashi p74(d), Corbis/M. Nelson/EPA p71(m), Corbis/C. Platiau p79(h), Corbis/B. Rondel p8(b), Corbis/Robert Sciarino/Star Ledger p126(tr), Corbis/R. Schulz p36(tr), Corbis/B. Vogel p126(br), Corbis/R. Weir p32, Corbis/S. Westnorland p102(l); Corbis RF pp23(tm), 28, 35(t), 44(Lg), 46(1,3,4,6,10,11), 90(m), 97(suitcase, passport), 118(tm, tr); CS Media, media@coachsrfing.com, p45(t); Digital Vision p47(br), 46(1), 85(t), 90(m); By kind permission of Encyclopedia of Life p102 (logo); Fotolibra/T. Louise Potgieter p47(m), Fotolibra/S. J. Young p20(r), Fotolibra/R. Down p129(r); Greater Manchester Passenger Transport Executive p98; Homeless World Cup <http://www.homelessworldcup.org> p119; John Frost Newspapers/The Washington Post p80(b); Getty Images/AlP p62(r), Getty/Arabian Eye p30, Getty/Archive Holdings Inc./Hulton Archive p55, Getty/Angelo Cavalj p50(r), Getty/D.K. Images/C. Stowers p93(t), Getty/D.K. Images p109(tr), Getty/Gallo Images/Travel Ink p116(m), Getty/Jonathan



Kirn p97(d), Getty/National Geographic p84(l), /Getty Images News p59, Getty Images Publicity p115(m), Getty/Photographers Choice pp10, 12(r), Getty/Phonica pp57(tr), 83, 109(br), Getty/S. Pitamitz p50(m), Getty/Retrofile p66(bl), Getty/Riser pp38(tr), p50(l), 66(tr), 82(ml), 86(l), Getty/Robert Harding World Imagery p128(tr), Getty/Stone pp14(mr), 23(t), 45(b), 56(bl), 56(hr), 57(tm), 66(ml), 82(b), p132, 109(hmr), 110(ml), Getty/Taxi pp38(bl), 66(mr), Getty/Uppercut Images p57(ml), Getty/The Image Bank pp23(l), 26(r), 38(br) 57(d), 58(b), 106(l), 120(r), p129(m), Getty/Taxi Japan p128(br), Getty/Time & Life Pictures pp6(ml), 56(l); Alan Hammans p85(h); **Image Source** pp7, 9(br), 46(7), 76, 90(t); **Impact Photos**/P.Menzel pp 49(bl, br), 134(t, b); **Joshua Tree Photography** pp 13(portraits), 57(m,b), 58(portraits), 73(t), 94, 97(bl, tr, br), 131(bl, br); **Lebrecht Music Collection**/T. Kenton p31(hr); **Lonely Planet**/B. Cruickshank p19, Lonely Planet/A. Blomqvist p106(r), Lonely Planet/D. Tomlinson p127(r); **Macmillan Publishers Ltd** p114(br), Macmillan Publishers Ltd/P. Bricknell pp114(ml), 114(bl), Macmillan Publishers Ltd/Haddon Davies pp44(f), 46(12), Macmillan Publishers Ltd/Dean Ryan/Rob Judges p44(c), Macmillan Publishers Ltd/D. Tolley pp 44(9), 46(13), 114(tr), 114(td); **Masterfile**/G. Grenier p68(r), Masterfile/M. Mahovich p74(tr), Masterfile/H. Vu p74(mr); **Nature** pl/Aflo p6(b), Nature pl/J. Walker p11(bl); **PA**/L. MacDonal/The Canadian Press p43(bm); **Panos Pictures**/R. Jones p104(d); **Photoalto** pp90(m), 93(b), 118(br); **Photodisc** pp44(a, b, h, j), 52; **Photographers Direct**/O. Noel p71(tr), Photographers Direct/Thierry Chesdin p121(l); **Photolibary**/Eshin-Anderson p36(bl), Photolibary/The British Library p78(r), Photolibary/Cuboimages p116(l), Photolibary/Y. Depollas p64, Photolibary/N. Emerson p14(r), Photolibary/V. Ernst p109(ml), Photolibary/M. Fogden p103(t), Photolibary/P. Harrison p128(l), Photolibary/Gavin Helliier p123(L), Photolibary/HTRB p14(l), Photolibary/P. Jirapas p128(mr), Photolibary/J. Lee p47(tr), Photolibary/L. Lepre p20(l), Photolibary/Y. Liu p86(ml), Photolibary/A. Mares-Manton p38(tl), Photolibary/D. Marsden p127(l), Photolibary/Mary Inc p107, Photolibary/B. Morandi p106(m), Photolibary/D. Pitcher p127(m), Photolibary/M. Polverelli p129(l), Photolibary/J. Raga p123(mr), Photolibary/J.-C&D, Pratt/Photononstop p115(l), Photolibary/IPS Photo Index p47(ml), Photolibary/S. Raphael p49(t), Photolibary/S. Raymer p34(ml), Photolibary/G. Rohman p126(mr), Photolibary/J. Sheagren p37(tm), Photolibary/J. Tack p62(l), Photolibary/Vidler p71(ml), Photolibary/R. Waldkirch p26(mr), Photolibary/A. Weller p26(l), Photolibary/C. & M. Werner p66(l); **By kind permission of Rhona Barclay Pickering** p73(b); **Plainpicture**/Hasengold p86(mr); **Reuters**/IL New p110(l); **Still Pictures**/C. Blumenstein p102(tr), **Rex Features** p86(r), Rex/D. Cooper p31(m), Rex/Design Pics Inc p82(ml), Rex/J. Downing p70, Rex/Everett Collection pp80(t), 81(b), p130(tr), Rex/Image Source p120(l), Rex/TTV p58(bl, inset), Rex/R. Jones p9(t), Rex/T. Larkin p31(tr), Rex/J. Lyons p66(br), Rex/J. McCauley p105, Rex/J. Ricola p14(ml); **Science Photo Library**/P. Menzel p48, Science Photo Library/BSIP/LA p110(mr), Science Photo Library/M. Donne p110(r); **Stockbyte** pp6(tr), 97(umbrella), 114(mr), 116; **Studio 8** p46(8); **Superstock** p13(tr); **Topfoto** pp78(bl, br), p79(t), Topfoto/HIP p37(t), Topfoto/The Granger Collection pp68(m), 130(ml), Topfoto/Image Works p81(t), Topfoto/UPPA p130(br); **By kind permission of United World Tourism Organization/Centro Español de Derechos Reprográficos** p70(l); **Medio Images Vidalatina** p 40; **The Kobal Collection**/ Trial by Fire p54; **Almanac Image** courtesy of the South Asian Division of the Library of Congress, p25(r).

Commissioned photography by **Dean Ryan** pp22(t), 108; **Joshua Tree Photography** pp15, 39, 63, 75, 87.

The author and publishers are grateful for permission to reprint the following copyright material: The National Post Company for an extract adapted from 'Unusual places to lay down your weary head' National Post, 10 May 2007 [www.canada.com](http://www.canada.com), material reprinted with the express permission of The National Post Company, a Canwest Partnership; Homeless World Cup Organisation for extracts from 'From the Bottle to the Cup', 6 Feb 2008; 'A ball can change the world'; and 'Edinburgh 2005-Player Quotes': Ricardo Arma, Captain Italy, Homeless World Cup Champions; and Dermot Haverly, Captain, Ireland, copyright © [www.homelessworldcup.org](http://www.homelessworldcup.org).

These materials may contain links for third party websites. We have no control over, and are not responsible for, the contents of such third party websites. Please use care when accessing them.

Although we have tried to trace and contact copyright holders before publication, in some cases this has not been possible. If contacted we will be pleased to rectify any errors or omissions at the earliest opportunity.

Printed and bound in Hong Kong

2014	2013	2012	2011	2010
10	9	8	7	6
5	4	3	2	



# global ELEMENTARY coursebook

LEARN ENGLISH, LEARN THROUGH ENGLISH, LEARN ABOUT ENGLISH

**global** is a ground-breaking 6-level adult course for today's learners of English. It enables you to learn English as it is used in our globalised world, to learn through English using information-rich topics and texts, and to learn about English as an international language.

**global** offers a comprehensive range of interactive digital components for use in class, out of class and even on the move. These include extra listening, video material and online practice. The **global** coursebook is also available in a fully interactive digital version with embedded multimedia assets.

## The Astrolabe

is an ancient tool used for navigating the seas, studying the stars and calculating the time anywhere on the planet. These were highly sophisticated and beautifully crafted instruments designed to further people's understanding of the world around them.

The images on the front cover and above show the inner and outer parts of a 1565 astrolabe by the Flemish maker Regnerus Arsenius, on display in the Museum of the History of Science, Oxford.

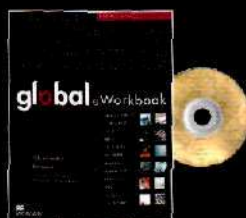


## Each level includes

### Coursebook



### eWorkbook



### Audio CDs



### Teacher's Book & Teacher's Resource Disc



### Global Digital (for classroom use)

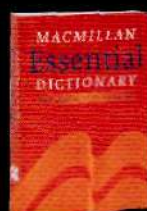


### Website



[www.macmillanenglish.com/global](http://www.macmillanenglish.com/global)

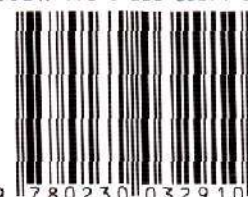
  
MACMILLAN



COMMON EUROPEAN FRAMEWORK

A1 A2 B1 B2 C1 C2

ISBN 978-0-230-03291-0



9 780230 032910